OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 68

The Travels of Marco Polo

Marco Polo · Rustichello da Pisa

Le Livre de Marco Polo

The Travels of Marco Polo

Part One: The Road to the Great Khan

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

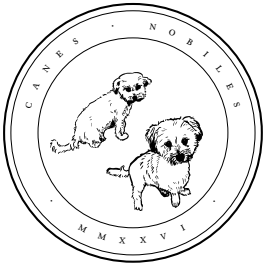


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 68 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows G. Pauthier's text
of the French court redaction, Le Livre de Marco Polo,
citoyen de Venise (Paris, 1865), the Prologue and chapters I–CIV

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps Pauthier's spelling and accents. The margin gives
his chapter numbers, and each chapter opens with its rubric;
his chapters are grouped into the reading sections, whose English heads
are this press's. A parenthesis in the text is his, most often his reading
of a figure, set as he prints it, and a square bracket his supplement.

CONTENTS

I · The Prologue; the Brothers Set Out 7
II · Bukhara and the Court of Kublai 12
III · The Golden Tablet; Acre and Venice 18
IV · Pope Gregory; the Return to the Khan 23
V · Mark in the Khan's Service 28
VI · The Voyage Home; End of the Prologue 34
VII · The Two Armenias and Turcomania 38
VIII · Georgia and Mosul 43
IX · Baghdad and the Caliph's Treasure 48
X · The Cobbler Moves the Mountain 54
XI · Tabriz and the Three Kings 61
XII · The Fire from Heaven; the Kingdoms of Persia 65
XIII · Yazd, Kerman, and the Karaunas 71
XIV · Hormuz 79
XV · The Deserts to Kuhbanan and Tunocain 85
XVI · The Old Man of the Mountain 89
XVII · The End of the Old Man; Balkh and the Salt Mountains 94

XVIII · Badakhshan, Pashai, and Kashmir 100
XIX · Wakhan, Pamir, Kashgar, and Samarkand 106
XX · Yarkand, Khotan, Pem, Charchan, and Lop 114
XXI · Shachau in Tangut 120
XXII · Kamul and Chingintalas 125
XXIII · Sukchur, Kampichu, and Etzina 130
XXIV · Karakorum and the Rise of Genghis 135
XXV · Genghis Against Prester John 140
XXVI · Genghis's Victory; the Khans and the Dead 144
XXVII · The Tartars' Marriages, Arms, and Justice 150
XXVIII · Bargu, the North, and Erguiul 159
XXIX · Egrigaia, Tenduc, and Chagan-nor 165
XXX · Shangdu and the Khan's Enchanters 171
XXXI · Kublai Khan and Nayan's Treason 181
XXXII · The Battle with Nayan 186
XXXIII · Nayan's Death; the Tablets of Command 194
XXXIV · Kublai, His Sons, and His Palace 201
XXXV · Khanbaliq and the Khan's Court 211
XXXVI · The Feasts of the Nativity and the White Feast 220
XXXVII · The Barons' Robes and the Khan's Beasts of Chase . . . 227
XXXVIII · The Khan's Great Hunt 233
XXXIX · The Khan's Year; the City of Khanbaliq 244
XL · The Paper Money 251
XLI · The Twelve Barons and the Post 256
XLII · The Khan's Bounty; Trees, Rice Wine, and Coal 266
XLIII · Alms in Khanbaliq; the Bridge of Pulisanghin 270

The book promises the marvels of Armenia, Persia, Tartary, and India, which Mark Pol of Venice saw or heard from men of truth; it was set down by Rustichello of Pisa in the prison of Genoa in 1298. In Baldwin's time the brothers Nicholas and Maffeo Pol sail from Constantinople to Soldaia, take their jewels to Barka Khan, and are paid twice their worth. A war between Barka and Hülegü bars the road home, so they go on by Ukek and across the Tigris and a desert of seventeen days.

Pour savoir la pure verité des diverses regions du monde, si
For to-know the pure truth of-the diverse regions of-the world so
prenez ce livre et le faites lire; si y trouverez les grandismes
take this book and it have read so there you-will-find the very-great
merveilles qui y sont escriptes de la grant Hermenie, et
marvels which there are written of the great Armenia and
de Perse, et des Tartars et d'Inde, et de maintes autres
of Persia and of-the Tartars and of-India and of many other
provinces, si comme notre livres vous contera tout par ordre
provinces so as our book to-you will-tell all by order
apertement; de quoi messires Marc Pol, sages et nobles
openly of which my-lord Mark Pol wise and noble
citoiens de Venisse, raconte pour ce que il les vit. Mais
citizen of Venice tells for this that he them saw But
auques y a de choses que il ne vit pas; mais il l'entendi
somewhat there is of things which he not saw at-all but he it-heard
d'hommes certains par verité. Et pour ce metrons les choses
from-men certain by truth And for this we-will-set the things
veues pour veues, et les entendues pour entendues, à ce que
seen for seen and the heard-ones for heard-ones to this that
nostre livre soit droit et veritables, sanz nulle mensonge. Et
our book be right and truthful without any lie And
chascuns qui ce livre orra, ou lira, le doie croire, pour
each who this book will-hear or will-read it must believe for

ce que toutes sont choses veritables. Car je vous faiz savoir
this that all are things truthful For I you make know
que, puis que notre sires diex fist Adam notre premier pere,
that since that our lord God made Adam our first father
ne fu onques homme de nulle generation qui tant sceust
not was ever man of any generation who so-much knew
ne cerchast des diverses parties du monde, et des grans
nor searched of-the diverse parts of-the world and of-the great
merveilles, comme cestui messires Marc Pol en sot. Et, pour
marvels as this my-lord Mark Pol thereof knew And for
ce, pensa que trop seroit grans maus se il ne feist mettre
this he-thought that too-much would-be great harm if he not had put
en escript ce que il avoit veu et oy par verité, à ce que
in writing that which he had seen and heard by truth to this that
les autres gens, qui ne l'ont veu ne oy, le sachent par cest
the other people who not it-have seen nor heard it may-know by this
livre. Et si vous di qu'il demoura à ce savoir en ces diverses
book And so you I-tell that-he dwelt at this knowing in these diverse
parties, bien .xxvi. ans. Lequel livre puis demorant en la
parts fully twenty-six years Which book then dwelling in the
carsere de Jenes, fist retraire par ordre à messire Rusta Pisan
prison of Genoa he-had drawn-up by order to my-lord Rusta Pisan
qui en celle meisme prison estoit, au temps que il couroit
who in that same prison was at-the time that it ran
de Crist M. CClxxxxviii (1298) ans de l'incarnation.
of Christ a-thousand two-hundred-ninety-eight 1298 years of the-incarnation

Comment les deux freres se partirent de Constantinoble 1

How the two brothers themselves departed from Constantinople

pour cherchier du monde.

for to-seek of-the world

Il fu voirs que au temps que Beaudouin estoit Empereeur

It was true that at-the time that Baldwin was Emperor

de Constantinoble, ce fu à .m.cc.l. (pour 1255)

of Constantinople it was at a-thousand-two-hundred-fifty for 1255

ans de Crist, Messires Nicolas Pol, qui peres Monseigneur

years of Christ My-lord Nicholas Pol who father (of-)My-lord

Marc estoit, et Messire Mafe, qui freres Messires Nicolas

Mark was and My-lord Maffeo who brother (of-)My-lord Nicholas

estoit; ces deux freres estoient en la cité de Constantinoble

was these two brothers were in the city of Constantinople

[alez], de Venisse, avec leur marchandise. Nobles et sages

gone from Venice with their merchandise Noble and wise

et pourveans estoient sanz faille. Il orent conseil entr'eulx

and provident they-were without fail They had counsel between-them

pris d'aler au Marmaiour por gaagnier. Il acheterent

taken of-going to-the Great-Sea for to-gain They bought

pluseurs joyaux et se partirent de Constantinoble, et

several jewels and themselves departed from Constantinople and

allerent par mer en Soldaie.

went by sea into Soldaia

Comment les deux freres se partirent de Soldaie. 2

How the two brothers themselves departed from Soldaia

Quant il furent venu en Soldaie si penserent, et leur

When they were come into Soldaia so they-thought and to-them

sembla bon, d'aler plus avant. Et se partirent de Soldaie,

it-seemed good of-going more forward And themselves they-departed from Soldaia

et se mistrent au chemin; et chevauchierent tant que

and themselves put on-the road and rode so-much that

il vinrent à un Seigneur Tartar, qui avoit à nom Abarca Kaan,
they came to a Lord Tartar who had as name Barka Khan
qui estoit au Sara et à Bolgara. Cestui Barca leur fist grant
who was at-the Sarai and at Bolgar This Barka to-them made great
honneur, aux deux freres, et ot moult grant joie de leur venue.
honor to-the two brothers and had very great joy of their coming
Et, eulz, lui donnerent touz les joyaux qu'il avoient apportez;
And they to-him gave all the jewels that-they had brought
et li Sires les reçut moult volentiers; et il plorent moult. Et
and the Lord them received very willingly and they pleased-him much And
leur fist donner moult bien deux tans plus que il ne valoient.
to-them he-had given very well two times more than they — were-worth

Et quand il furent demouré avec leur Seigneur un an,
And when they were dwelt with their Lord a year
si sourdi une grant guerre entre Barca et Alau le Seigneur
so arose a great war between Barka and Hülegü the Lord
des Tartars devers soleil levant. Et furent grant ost et
of-the Tartars toward sun rising And there-were great host and
d'une part et d'autre. Mais en la fin fu desconfis Barca,
of-one part and of-other But in the end was defeated Barka
le Seigneur des Tartars de ponent. Et moururent moult
the Lord of-the Tartars of west And died much
de gent, et d'une part et d'autre; si que, pour la choison
of people and of-one part and of-other so that for the cause
de ceste guerre, nulz ne povoit aler par chemin que il ne
of this war anyone not could go by road that he not
fust pris. Mais ce peril couroit par le chemin par là où
were taken But this peril ran by the road by there where
il estoient venu; si que avant povoit chascuns chevauchier
they were come so that forward could each ride
seurement, et non torner arriere. Pourquoy aux deux freres
safely and not turn back Wherefore to-the two brothers

sembla bon d'aler encore avant, puis que il ne povoient
it-seemed good of-going yet forward since that they not could
retorner. Et se partirent de Bolgara et s'en
return And themselves they-departed from Bolgar and themselves-thence
alerent en une cité qui avoit à nom Oucaca, qui estoit la
went into a city which had as name Ukek which was the
fin du regne du seigneur de Ponent. Et de Oucaca se
end of-the realm of-the lord of West And from Ukek themselves
partirent et passerent le grant flun de Tigeri, et alerent par
they-departed and crossed the great river of Tigris and went by
un desert qui est loins .xvij. journées. Il ne trouverent
a desert which is long seventeen day-journeys They not found
ville ne chastel, fors seulement Tartars en leur tentes qui
town nor castle except only Tartars in their tents who
venoient de leur bestes qui paissoient aux champs.
came from their beasts which grazed in-the fields

The brothers reach Bukhara and are stranded there three years. Envoys of Hülegü bound for the great Khan, who has never seen a Latin, persuade them to come along, and after a year's ride they reach Kublai. He questions them about the emperors, kings, Pope, Church, and customs of the Latins, and sends them back to the Pope with his baron Cogatal and a letter: if a hundred learned men can prove Christ's law the best, he and all his power will become Christian. He asks too for oil from the lamp of the Sepulcher.

3 Comment les deux freres passerent un desert, et vindrent
How the two brothers crossed a desert and came
à la cité de Bocara.
to the city of Bukhara

Quant il orent passé cel desert, si vindrent à une cité qui
When they had crossed that desert so they-came to a city which
est appellée Bocara, moult noble et grant. La province a
is called Bukhara very noble and great The province has
aussi à nom Bocara. Et en estoit roys un qui avoit à nom
also as name Bukhara And thereof was king one who had as name
Barac. La cité estoit la meilleur de toute Perse. Et quant
Barak The city was the best of all Persia And when
il furent là venu, si ne porent plus aler avant, ne retorner
they were there come so not they-could more go forward nor return
arriere. Si que il demourerent en ladite cité de Bocara trois
back So that they dwelt in the-said city of Bukhara three
ans. Et endementiers que il sejournoient en celle cité, si vint
years And meanwhile that they sojourned in that city so came
messages d'Alau, le seigneur de levant, lesquelz aloient au
envoys of-Hülegü the lord of east who went to-the
grant Kaan, le Seigneur de touz les Tartars du monde. Et
great Khan the Lord of all the Tartars of-the world And

quant ces messages virent ces deux freres, si orent merveille,
when these envoys saw these two brothers so they-had wonder
pour ce que onques mais n'avoient veu nul Latin en cele terre.
for this that ever more not-they-had seen any Latin in that land
Si dirent aux deux freres: «Seigneur, se vous nous voulez
So they-said to-the two brothers Lords if you us wish
croire, vous en aurez grant profit et grant honneur.» Et
to-believe you thereof will-have great profit and great honor And
ceux leur respondirent que il les orroient volentiers de quoi.
they to-them answered that they them would-hear willingly of what
«Si leur dirent les messages que li grant Kaan ne vit onques
So to-them said the envoys that the great Khan not saw ever
nul Latin; et moult a grant desir de veoir en aucun. Et,
any Latin and much has great desire of seeing thereof some And
pour ce, se vous voulez venir avecques nous et jusques à lui,
for this if you wish to-come with us and as-far-as to him
sachiez, sanz faille, que il vous verra volentiers, et vous fera
know without fail that he you will-see willingly and to-you will-do
grant honneur et grant bien; et pourrez venir avecques
great honor and great good and you-will-be-able come with
nous seurement, sanz nul encombrier de nulle gent.»
us safely without any hindrance from any people

Comment les deux freres crurent les messagés pour aller 4
How the two brothers believed the envoys for to-go
au grant Kaan.
to-the great Khan

Quant les deux freres furent appareillie pour aler avec les
When the two brothers were made-ready for to-go with the
messages, si se mirent à la voie avec les messages et
envoys so themselves they-put to the way with the envoys and
chevauchierent un an entier par tramontaigne et par grec,
rode a year whole by north and by northeast

avant que il fussent là venu où estoit le Seigneur. Et,
before that they were there come where was the Lord And
chevauchant, trouverent moult grans merveilles de diversités
riding they-found very great marvels of diversities
de choses, lesquelles nous ne conterons pas ore, pour ce
of things which we not will-tell at-all now for this
que Messires Marc, qui toutes ces choses vit aussi, le vous
that My-lord Mark who all these things saw also it to-you
contera en cest livre en avant tout appertement.
will-tell in this book on forward all openly

5 Comment les deux freres vindrent au grant Kaan.
How the two brothers came to-the great Khan

Quant les deux freres furent venu au grant Kaan, il les
When the two brothers were come to-the great Khan he them
reçut à moult grant honneur, et leur fist moult grant feste
received with very great honor and to-them made very great feast
et ot moult grant alegrece de leur venue, et leur demanda
and had very great gladness of their coming and them asked
de maintes choses: premierement des Empereurs, et comment
of many things first of-the Emperors and how
il maintiennent leur seigneurie et leur terre en justice; et
they maintain their lordship and their land in justice and
comment il vont en bataille, et de tout leur afaires. Et après
how they go into battle and of all their affairs And after
leur demanda des Roys et des princes et des autres barons.
them he-asked of-the Kings and of-the princes and of-the other barons

Comment le grant Kaan leur demanda encore du fait 6
How the great Khan them asked further of-the matter
des Crestiens et proprement de l'Apostolle de Romme.
of-the Christians and especially of the-Pope of Rome
Et puis leur demanda du Pape et de l'Eglise, et tout le
And then them he-asked of-the Pope and of the-Church and all the
fait de Romme, et de toutes les coustumes des Latins. Et
matter of Rome and of all the customs of-the Latins And
les deux freres lui en dirent la verité de chascune chose
the two brothers to-him thereof told the truth of each thing
par soy, bien et ordeneement et sagement, si comme sages
by itself well and orderly and wisely so as wise
hommes que il estoient; car bien savoient la langue tatarese.
men that they were for well they-knew the language Tartar
Comment le grant Kaan envoia les deux freres pour ses 7
How the great Khan sent the two brothers for his
Messages au Pape.
Envoys to-the Pope
Quant le Seigneur, qui Cublay Kaan avoit à nom, Seigneur
When the Lord who Kublai Khan had as name Lord
des Tatars de tout le monde, et de toutes les provinces
of-the Tartars of all the world and of all the provinces
et regnes et regions de celle grandisme partie du siecle,
and realms and regions of that very-great part of-the world
ot entendu tout le fait des Latins, si comme les deux
had heard all the matter of-the Latins so as the two
freres lui avoient conté, si li plot moult. Si pensa
brothers to-him had told so to-him it-pleased much So he-thought
en soy meismes d'envoier les en message à l'Apostolle. Si
in himself same of-sending them in embassy to the-Pope So
leur pria moult d'aler en ceste messagerie avec un de ses
them he-begged much of-going on this embassy with one of his

barons. Et il lui respondirent que il feroient volentiers
barons And they to-him answered that they would-do willingly
tout son commandement comme de leur Seigneur. Si envoia
all his command as of their Lord So sent
le Seigneur querre devant soi un de ses barons, qui avoit
the Lord seek before himself one of his barons who had
nom Cogatal, et lui dist qu'il s'appareillast, et qu'il
name Cogatal and to-him said that-he himself-make-ready and that-he
vouloit que il alast avec les deux freres à l'Apostolle. Cilz
wished that he should-go with the two brothers to the-Pope He
li respondi que il feroit son commandement à son povoir.
to-him answered that he would-do his command to his power

Apres ce, le Seigneur fist faire ses chartres en langue
After this the Lord had made his charters in language
tartoise pour envoyer au Pape, et les bailla aus deux
Tartar for to-send to-the Pope and them handed to-the two
freres et à son baron; et leur enchargea ce que il voult
brothers and to his baron and them charged that which he wished
que il deussent dire à l'Apostolle. Et sachiez que en la
that they should say to the-Pope And know that in the
chartre se contenoit ce que vous orrez. Il mandoit disant
charter itself contained that which you will-hear He sent-word saying
à l'Apostolle que se il lui vouloit envoyer jusques à cent
to the-Pope that if he to-him wished to-send as-far-as to hundred
sages hommes de notre loi crestienne; et que il seussent de
wise men of our law Christian and that they knew of
tous les sept ars, et que bien seussent desputer et moustrer
all the seven arts and that well they-knew dispute and show
apertement aux ydolastres, et aux autres conversations de
openly to-the idolaters and to-the other conversations of
gens, par force de raysons, comment la loy de Crist estoit
people by force of reasons how the law of Christ was

la meilleur, et que toutes les loys autres sont mauveses et
the best and that all the laws other are wicked and
fausses; et se il prouvoient ce, que il, et tout son povoir
false and if they proved this that he and all his power
devendroient crestien et homme de l'Eglise. Encor leur
would-become Christian and men of the-Church Further them
encharga que il lui deussent aporter de l'uille de la lampe
he-charged that they to-him should bring of the-oil of the lamp
qui art sus le sepulcre notre Seigneur en Jherusalem.»
which burns upon the sepulcher our Lord in Jerusalem

En tel maniere comme vous avez entendu contenoit leur
In such manner as you have heard contained their
messagerie que le grant Sires envoioit à l'Apostolle, par ses
embassy which the great Lord sent to the-Pope by his
trois messages: le baron Tartar et les deux freres Messires
three envoys the baron Tartar and the two brothers My-lord
Nicolas Pol et Messire Mafe Pol.
Nicholas Pol and My-lord Maffeo Pol

Kublai gives the three envoys a golden tablet commanding that they be supplied everywhere. The Tartar baron falls sick and stays behind; the brothers, served and honored all the way, take three years to reach Ayas. At Acre they learn that the Pope is dead, and the legate Tedaldo of Piacenza bids them wait for a new one. In Venice Nicholas finds his wife dead and a son of fifteen, Mark. After two years with no Pope they return with Mark to Acre, fetch oil from Jerusalem, and take the legate's letters.

8 Comment le grand Kaan leur donna la table d'or de son
How the great Khan them gave the tablet of-gold of his
commandement.
command

Quant le Seigneur leur ot enchargie toute sa messagerie,
When the Lord them had charged all his embassy
il leur fist donner une table d'or, en laquelle se contenoit
he to-them had given a tablet of-gold in which itself contained
que les trois messages, en touz les pays ou il alassent,
that the three envoys in all the countries where they should-go
leur deust estre donné toutes les choses que besoins leur
to-them should be given all the things that need to-them
fust; et de chevaulx et d'hommes pour leur seurté; et de
were and of horses and of-men for their safety and of
toutes autres choses que il vousissent. Et quant il furent
all other things that they might-wish And when they were
bien appareillie de leurs besoignes «touz trois ambasaors,»
well made-ready of their needs all three ambassadors
si pristrent congie au Seigneur et s'empartirent.
so they-took leave of-the Lord and themselves-thence-departed

Quant il orent chevauchie ne say quantes jornées, si
When they had ridden not I-know how-many day-journeys so
chei, le baron Tartar, malades; si que il ne pot chevauchier;
fell the baron Tartar sick so that he not could ride
et demora en une cité, et fu tant grevé de maladie que
and remained in a city and was so-much burdened with sickness that
il ne pot plus aler avant. Si que aux deux freres sembla
he not could more go forward So that to-the two brothers it-seemed
«bon de laissier le, et de fournir leur message; et il lui
good of leaving him and of fulfilling their embassy and it to-him
plot moult; et se mistrent à la voie. Et vous di bien
pleased much and themselves they-put on the way And you I-tell well
que, toutes pars où il aloient, estoient servi et honneuré
that all parts where they went they-were served and honored
de tout ce que besoins leur estoit, et que il seussent
of all that which need to-them was and which they might-know
commander. Et avoient ce, par la «table,» que il avoient,
command And they-had this by the tablet which they had
des «commandemenz» au Seigneur. Si que il chevauchierent
of-the commands of-the Lord So that they rode
tant par leur journées que il vindrent à Layas en Hermenie.
so-much by their day-journeys that they came to Ayas in Armenia
Et vous di que il demourerent à cheminer jusqu'à Layas
And you I-tell that they took at traveling as-far-as-to Ayas
trois ans. Et ce avint pour ce que il ne porent pas toutes
three years And this happened for this that they not could at-all all
foiz chevauchier por le mauvais temps pour la nef, et pour
times ride for the bad weather for the snow and for
les pluies que il faisoit aucunes fois moult grans, et des
the rains which it made some times very great and of-the
grans pluviaires que il trouvoient, que il ne povoient passer.
great floods which they found which they not could cross

9 Comment les deux freres vindrent à la cité d'Acre.

How the two brothers came to the city of-Acre

Et de Layas se partirent et vindrent en Acre, et

And from Ayas themselves they-departed and came into Acre and

y vindrent le mois d'avril courant M.CC.LX (pour

there came the month of-April running a-thousand-two-hundred-sixty for

1269) ans de Crist, et trouverent que le Pape estoit mort. Et

1269 years of Christ and found that the Pope was dead And

quant il virent que l'Apostolle estoit mort, qui avoit à nom

when they saw that the-Pope was dead who had as name

Pape, il alerent à un sage clerc qui estoit Legat de tout le

Pope they went to a wise cleric who was Legate of all the

regne d'Egypte; et estoit de grant auctorité, et avoit à nom

realm of-Egypt and was of great authority and had as name

Ceabo de Plaisance. Il lui dirent la messagerie pourquoi

Tedaldo of Piacenza They to-him told the embassy wherefore

il estoient là venu. Et quand le Legat ot ce entendu,

they were there come And when the Legate had this heard

si en ot moult grant merveille, et lui sembla que ce

so thereof had very great wonder and to-him it-seemed that this

estoit grant bien et grant honneur de toute la Crestienneté.

was great good and great honor of all the Christendom

Si respondi aux deux freres messaiges: «Seigneurs, vous veez

So he-answered to-the two brothers envoys Lords you see

bien que l'Apostolle est mort; et pour ce, vous convendra

well that the-Pope is dead and for this you it-will-behoove

souffrir jusques à tant que li Apostolles soit faiz. Et

to-wait until to such-time that the Pope be made And

quant il sera faiz, vous porrez faire votre messagerie.» Il

when he will-be made you will-be-able do your embassy They

virent bien que le Legat leur disoit voir. Si distrent que,

saw well that the Legate to-them said truth So they-said that

«entretant que on fera un Pape, nous porrons bien aler en
meanwhile that one will-make a Pope we will-be-able well go into
Venisse pour veoir nos hostielz.» Si se partirent d'Acre
Venice for to-see our households So themselves they-departed from-Acre
et alerent à Negrepont; et de Negrepont nagerent tant que
and went to Negropont and from Negropont they-sailed so-much that
il vindrent en Venisse. Et quant il furent venu en Venisse,
they came into Venice And when they were come into Venice
si trouva, Messires Nicolas, sa femme morte; et lui estoit
so found My-lord Nicholas his wife dead and to-him was
remes, de sa femme, un filz de .xv. ans, lequel avoit à nom
left of his wife a son of fifteen years who had as name
Marc, de qui ce livre parolle. Les deux freres demourerent
Mark of whom this book speaks The two brothers dwelt
à Venisse deux ans, en atendant que Papes fust faiz.
at Venice two years in waiting that Pope were made

Comment les deux freres se partirent de Venisse, 10
How the two brothers themselves departed from Venice
et menerent avec eulx Marc, le filz de Messire Nicolas,
and led with them Mark the son of My-lord Nicholas
pour le mener avec eulx au grant Kaan.
for him to-lead with them to-the great Khan

Quant les deux freres orent atendu tant comme vous avez
When the two brothers had waited so-long as you have
ouy, et virent que Apostolles ne se faisoit, si dirent que
heard and saw that Pope not himself made so they-said that
il pourroient trop demourer huymais pour retourner au
they could too-long delay henceforth for to-return to-the
grant Kaan. Si se partirent de Venisse et enmenerent
great Khan So themselves they-departed from Venice and took-along
Marc, et s'en retournerent droit en Acre, et là
Mark and themselves-thence returned straight into Acre and there

trouverent ledit Legat. Si parlerent assez à lui de ce fait,
found the-said Legate So they-spoke much to him of this matter
et li demanderent congie d'aler en Jherusalem pour avoir
and of-him asked leave of-going into Jerusalem for to-have
de l'uille de la lampe du Sepulcre, pour, avec euls, porter
of the-oil of the lamp of-the Sepulcher for with them to-carry
au grant Kaan, si comme il leur avoit commandé. Le Legat
to-the great Khan so as he them had commanded The Legate
leur donna congie. Si se partirent d'Acre et allerent en
to-them gave leave So themselves they-departed from-Acre and went into
Jherusalem, et orent de l'uille de la lampe du Sepulchre; et
Jerusalem and had of the-oil of the lamp of-the Sepulcher and
s'en retournerent encore en Acre. Et là trouverent le
themselves-thence returned again into Acre And there they-found the
Legat, et lui dirent: «Puis que nous ne veons que Apostolle
Legate and to-him said Since that we not see that Pope
n'est faiz, nous voulons retourner au grant Kaan; car trop
not-is made we wish to-return to-the great Khan for too-long
avons des ores mais atendu, et avons assez demouré.» Et
we-have from now more waited and have much delayed And
le Legat leur dist: «Puis que vous voulez retourner, il
the Legate to-them said Since that you wish to-return it
me plaist bien.» Si fist faire ses lettres, pour envoyer au
me pleases well So he-had made his letters for to-send to-the
grant Kaan, qui tesmoignoient comment les deux freres
great Khan which testified how the two brothers
estoient bien venu pour accomplir son commandement. Mais
were well come for to-accomplish his command But
pour ce que Apostolle n'y avoit, ne l'avoient peu faire.
for this that Pope not-there was not it-they-had been-able do

At Ayas they hear that the legate is elected Pope Gregory, and a galley brings them back to Acre. He gives them his blessing, letters, and two learned friars, Nicholas of Vicenza and William of Tripoli. When the Sultan Bundukdar invades Armenia the friars lose heart, hand over the charters, and leave with the Master of the Temple. The brothers and Mark ride three and a half years to Kaipingfu, where Kublai receives them with great joy, takes the holy oil, and welcomes Mark as his man.

Comment les deux freres et Marc avec eulx se partirent 11
How the two brothers and Mark with them themselves departed
d'Acre.
from-Acre

Quant les deux freres orent les lettres du Legat, il se
When the two brothers had the letters of-the Legate they themselves
partirent d'Acre pour retourner au grant Kaan, et s'en
departed from-Acre for to-return to-the great Khan and themselves-thence
vindrent à Layas. Et quant il furent là venu, il ne demoura
came to Ayas And when they were there come it not remained
gaires que cestui Legat, dit devant, fu esleu à Pape en Acre.
much that this Legate said before was elected to Pope in Acre
Et s'appeloit: «Pape Gregoire de Plaisance,» de quoi les deux
And himself-he-called Pope Gregory of Piacenza of which the two
freres orent moult grant joie. Et sur ce, leur vint à Layas,
brothers had very great joy And upon this to-them came to Ayas
de par le Legat, qui Papes estoit, un message qui leur
from by the Legate who Pope was an envoy who to-them
dist, de par l'Apostolle, que il n'alassent plus avant; ains
said from by the-Pope that they not-should-go more forward but
retournassent en Acre à lui maintenant. Et que [vous] en
should-return into Acre to him at-once And what you thereof

diroie je? Le Roy d'Armenie leur fist amener une gallée,
would-tell I The King of-Armenia to-them had brought a galley
aux deux freres messages; et les envoia en Acre au Pape.
to-the two brothers envoys and them sent into Acre to-the Pope

12 Comment les deux freres vindrent à l'Apostolle.
How the two brothers came to the-Pope

Et quant il furent venu en Acre moult honnouréement,
And when they were come into Acre very honorably
si alerent devant le Pape, et s'umelierent moult vers lui. Le
so they-went before the Pope and themselves-humbled much toward him The
Pape les reçut à moult grant honneur, et leur fist moult
Pope them received with very great honor and to-them made very
grant joie et grant feste; et leur donna sa beneicon. Apres
great joy and great feast and to-them gave his blessing After
leur donna deux freres prescheurs pour aler au grant Sire,
to-them he-gave two friars preachers for to-go to-the great Lord
pour fournir la besoigne. Et, sans faille, il estoient les plus
for to-fulfill the business And without fail they were the most
sages clers, qui, à celui temps, feussent. L'un avoit nom frere
wise clerics who at that time were The-one had name friar
Nicole des Vicence, et l'autre frere Guillaume de Triple. Et
Nicholas of Vicenza and the-other friar William of Tripoli And
leur donna ses privileges et ses chartres de la Messagerie que
to-them he-gave his privileges and his charters of the Embassy which
il remandoit au grant Seigneur. Et quant il orent receu ce
he sent-back to-the great Lord And when they had received that
que il devoient, si pristrent congie du Pape, et sa beneicon;
which they ought so they-took leave of-the Pope and his blessing
et se partirent tuit quatre ensemble d'Acre; et avec euls
and themselves departed all four together from-Acre and with them
Marc le filz à Messire Nicolas, et s'en alerent à Layas.
Mark the son to My-lord Nicholas and themselves-thence went to Ayas

Et quant il furent là venu, adonc Bendocquedar,
And when they were there come then Bundukdar
Sodam de Babiloine, entra en Hermenie avec grant ost de
Sultan of Babylon entered into Armenia with great host of
Sarrasins, et fist moult grant damages par les contrées.
Saracens and did very great damages through the countries
Et furent, ces diz messagés, en grant aventure d'estre mort
And were these said envoys in great hazard of-being dead
ou pris; si que, quand les deux freres prescheurs virent
or taken so that when the two friars preachers saw
ce, si orent moult grant paour d'aler avant. Il donnerent
this so they-had very great fear of-going forward They gave
à Messire Nicolas et à Messire Maffe, toutes les chartres
to My-lord Nicholas and to My-lord Maffeo all the charters
et touz les privileges que il avoient, et se partirent
and all the privileges that they had and themselves departed
d'euls; et s'en alerent avec le Maistre du Temple.
from-them and themselves-thence went with the Master of-the Temple

Comment Messire Nicolas et Messire Maffe Pol, et Marc s'en alerent au grant Kaan. 13

How My-lord Nicholas and My-lord Maffeo Pol and Mark themselves-thence went to-the great Khan

Et se mistrent les deux freres et Marc avec euls à
And themselves put the two brothers and Mark with them to
la voie; et chevauchierent tant, et d'iver et d'esté, par
the way and rode so-much both of-winter and of-summer by
leur journées que il furent venu au grant Kaan, qui adonc
their day-journeys that they were come to-the great Khan who then
estoit en une cité qui avoit nom Clemeinfu, qui moult estoit
was in a city which had name Kaipingfu which very was
riche et grant. Et de ce que il trouverent en la voie, en
rich and great And of that which they found on the way in

alant et en retournant, ne vous ferons nous ores mencion,
going and in returning not to-you will-make we now mention
pour ce que nous le vous conterons ça en avant, en ce
for this that we it to-you will-tell here on forward in this
notre livre tout apertement et par ordre. Et demourerent,
our book all openly and by order And they-took
au retourner, bien trois ans et demy; et ce fu par les
at-the returning fully three years and a-half and this was through the
maus temps que il orent et pour les granz froidures. Et si
bad weathers which they had and for the great colds And so
sachiez, par vérité, que quant le grant Kaan sot que Messires
know by truth that when the great Khan knew that My-lord
Nicolas et Messires Maffe Pol, ses Messagiers, retournoient,
Nicholas and My-lord Maffeo Pol his Envoys were-returning
il envoia ses messagés encontre euls bien .xl. journées; et
he sent his envoys to-meet them fully forty day-journeys and
furent moult bien servi et honnouré par la voie, en alant
they-were very well served and honored by the way in going
et en retournant, de tout ce que il savoient demander.
and in returning of all that which they knew ask

14 Comment Messire Nicolas et Messire Maffe Pol, et
How My-lord Nicholas and My-lord Maffeo Pol and
Marc, alerent devant le grant Kaan.
Mark went before the great Khan

Et que vous en diroie je? Quant les deux freres et
And what you thereof would-tell I When the two brothers and
Marc furent venu en celle grant cité, si s'en alerent
Mark were come into that great city so themselves-thence they-went
au maistre palais, là où il trouverent le Seigneur à
to-the master palace there where they found the Lord with
moult grant compaignie de barons. Il s'agenoillierent devant
very great company of barons They knelt before

lui et s'umilierent tant comme il porent. Le Seigneur les
him and themselves-humbled as-much as they could The Lord them
fist drecier en estant, et les reçut moult honnorablement; et
had raised in standing and them received very honorably and
leur fist moult grant joie et grant feste; et leur demanda
to-them made very great joy and great feast and them asked
moult de leur estre, et comment il avoient puis fait?
much of their being and how they had since done

Cil respondirent que il ont moult bien fait, puis que il
They answered that they have very well done since that they
l'ont trouvé sain et haitie. Adonc li presenterent les
him-have found healthy and hale Then to-him they-presented the
privileges et les chartres que il avoient de par l'Apostolle;
privileges and the charters which they had from by the-Pope
desqueles il ot grant leesce. Puis li donnerent le saint
of-which he had great gladness Then to-him they-gave the holy
huille du Sepulcre; et fu moult alegre; et l'ot moult
oil of-the Sepulcher and he-was very glad and it-held very
chier. Et quant il vit Marc, qui estoit joenne bacheler, si
dear And when he saw Mark who was young bachelor so
demanda qui il estoit? «Sire, dist son pere Messire Nicolas,
he-asked who he was Lord said his father My-lord Nicholas
il est mon filz et vostre homme. — Bien soit il venuz, dist
he is my son and your man Well be he come said
le Seigneur.» — Et pourquoy vous en feroie je lonc
the Lord And wherefore you thereof would-make I long
compte? Sachiez que il ot à la Court du Seigneur moult
tale Know that it there-was at the Court of-the Lord very
grant feste de leur venue; et moult estoient servi et honorez
great feast of their coming and much they-were served and honored
de touz. Et demourerent à la Court avec les autres barons.
of all And they-dwelt at the Court with the other barons

Mark learns the Tartars' customs, languages, and four of their scripts. Sent on a mission six months away, he brings back all the strange things he saw, as other envoys never did; so he is called My Lord Mark Pol and serves seventeen years on the Khan's missions. The Khan will not let the Venetians go home until Queen Bolgana dies and Arghun's three barons come for a bride of her lineage, the lady Kökächin. Mark is back from India by sea, and the barons ask for the three Latins as guides; the Khan reluctantly grants leave.

15 Comment le Seigneur envoia Marc pour son message.

How the Lord sent Mark for his envoy

Or avint que Marc, le filz Messire Nicolas, aprist si bien

Now it-happened that Mark the son (of-)My-lord Nicholas learned so well

la coustume des Tartars et leur languages et leur lettres, et

the custom of-the Tartars and their languages and their letters and

leur archerie, que ce fu merveilles. Car sachiez vraiement: il sot

their archery that it was marvels For know truly he knew

en poi de temps pluseurs languages, et sot de .iiij. lettres de

in little of time several languages and knew of four letters of

leur escriptures. Il estoit sages et porveans en toutes choses;

their writings He was wise and provident in all things

si que, pour ce, le Seigneur li vouloit moult grant bien. Si

so that for this the Lord him wished very great good So

que, quant le Seigneur vit que il estoit si sages, et de si beau

that when the Lord saw that he was so wise and of so fair

et bon portement, si l'envoia, en un message, en une terre

and good bearing so him-be-sent on an embassy into a land

où bien avoit .vj. mois de chemin. Le joenne bacheler fist sa

where fully there-was six months of road The young bachelor did his

messagerie bien et sagement. Et por ce que il avoit veu et

embassy well and wisely And for this that he had seen and

seu pluseurs fois que le Seigneur envoioit ses messagés par
known several times that the Lord sent his envoys through
diverses parties du monde, et quant il retournoient, il ne
diverse parts of-the world and when they returned they not
li savoient autre chose dire, que ce pourquoy il estoient
to-him knew other thing say than that wherefore they were
alé; si les tenoit touz à folz et à nices. Et leur disoit:
gone so them he-held all for fools and for simpletons And to-them he-said
«Je ameroie miex ouir les nouvelles choses et les manieres
I would-love better hear the new things and the manners
des diverses contrées que ce pourquoi tu es alez.» Car
of-the diverse countries than that wherefore thou art gone For
moult se deleitoit à entendre estranges choses. Si que, pour
much himself he-delighted at hearing strange things So that for
ce, en alant et retornant, il [Marc Pol] mist moult s'entente
this in going and returning he Mark Pol put much his-attention
de savoir de toutes diverses choses, selonc les contrées,
of knowing of all diverse things according-to the countries
à ce que, à son retour, le peust dire au grant Kaan.
to this that at his return it he-might tell to-the great Khan

Comment Marc retourna de son message. 16

How Mark returned from his embassy

Quant Marc fu retourné de sa messagerie, si s'en ala
When Mark was returned from his embassy so himself-thence he-went
devant le Seigneur et li denonça tout le fait pourquoi il
before the Lord and to-him announced all the matter wherefore he
estoit alez, et comment il avoit bien achevé toute sa besoigne.
was gone and how he had well achieved all his business
Puis li conta toutes les novissetés, et toutes les estranges
Then to-him he-told all the novelties and all the strange
choses que il avoit veu et seu bien et sagement. Si que le
things which he had seen and known well and wisely So that the

Seigneur, et touz ceulx qui l'ouïrent, si furent merveillés, et
Lord and all those who him-heard so were marveled and
distrent: «Se ces joennes homs vit, il ne puet faillir qu'il ne
said If this young man lives he not can fail that-he —
soit homs de grant sens et de grant valours.» Si que, pour ce,
be man of great sense and of great worth So that for this
deslors en avant, fu il appellez: «Messire Marc Pol.» Et ainsi
from-then on forward was he called My-lord Mark Pol And thus
le nommera des ore mès ce notre livre; car c'est bien raison.
him will-name from now more this our book for it-is well reason

Apres ce, demoura Messire Marc Pol, entour le Seigneur,
After this dwelt My-lord Mark Pol around the Lord
bien .xvij. ans; toute foiz alant et venant de çà et de
fully seventeen years all times going and coming from here and from
là en messagerie, par diverses contrées là où le Seigneur
there on embassy through diverse countries there where the Lord
l'envoioit. Et il, comme sages, et congnoissans toute la maniere
him-sent And he as wise and knowing all the manner
du Seigneur, se penoit moult de savoir et de entendre toutes
of-the Lord himself strove much of knowing and of hearing all
choses que il cuidoit qui pleussent au grant Kaan. Si que, à
things which he thought which might-please to-the great Khan So that at
ses retornées, il contoit tout ordenéement; si que, pour ce, le
his returns he told all orderly so that for this the
Seigneur l'amoit moult et moult li plesoit. Et pour ceste
Lord him-loved much and much to-him it-pleased And for this
cause l'envoioit il plus souvent en toutes ses grans messageries,
cause him-sent he more often on all his great embassies
et bones et les plus loingtaines. Et il les faisoit toutefoiz
and good-ones and the most distant And he them did always
bien et sagement, la Dieu merci. De quoi le Seigneur l'ama
well and wisely the (of-)God mercy Of which the Lord him-loved

moult, et li faisoit moult grant honneur; et le tenoit si
much and to-him did very great honor and him held so
près de soy, que pluseurs barons en avoient grant envie. Et
near to himself that several barons thereof had great envy And
ce fu la choison pourquoi ledit Messire Marc Pol en sot
this was the cause wherefore the-said My-lord Mark Pol thereof knew
plus, et en vit, des diverses contrées du monde, que nul
more and thereof saw of-the diverse countries of-the world than any
autre homme. Et sur touz mettoit il moult s'ententе à savoir,
other man And above all put he much his-attention at knowing
à espier et à enquerre, pour raconter au grant Seigneur.
at spying and at inquiring for to-tell to-the great Lord

17 Comment Messire Nicolas, et Messire Maffe et Marc,
How My-lord Nicholas and My-lord Maffeo and Mark
demanderent congie au grant Seigneur.
asked leave of-the great Lord

Quant les deux freres et Marc orent demouré avec
When the two brothers and Mark had dwelt with
le Seigneur tant comme vous avez oy, si penserent
the Lord so-long as you have heard so they-thought
entr'eus de retourner en leur contrées, car bien en
between-themselves of returning into their countries for well thereof
estoit desormais temps. Il demanderent pluseurs fois congie
was henceforth time They asked several times leave
au Seigneur, et priant lui moult doucement; mais il les
of-the Lord and begging him very sweetly but he them
amoit tant et les tenoit si volentiers entour lui que il
loved so-much and them held so willingly around him that he
ne leur vouloit donner congie pour riens du monde.
not to-them wished to-give leave for anything of-the world

Or avint que en celle saison morut la Royne Bolgara,
Now it-happened that in that season died the Queen Bolgana
la femme Argon, le Seigneur du Levant. Et laissa en son
the wife (of-)Arghun the Lord of-the East And she-left in her
testament que nulle dame ne poist seoir en sa chaiere, ne
testament that any lady not could sit in her chair nor
estre fame d'Argon, se ne fust de son lignage. Si que Argon
be wife of-Arghun if not were of her lineage So that Arghun
prist trois de ses barons que on nommoit ainsi: le premier
took three of his barons whom one named thus the first
Oulatay; le secont Apusca; et le tiers Coia; et les envoia
Oulatai the second Apusca and the third Coja and them sent
en son message au grant Kaan, avec moult bele compaignie,
on his embassy to-the great Khan with very fair company
qu'il li deust envoier une fame qui fust du lignage de la
that-he to-him should send a wife who were of-the lineage of the
Royne Bolgara sa fame, qui morte estoit, pour soi marier.
Queen Bolgana his wife who dead was for himself to-marry

Et quant ces .iij. barons furent venuz au grant Kaan,
And when these three barons were come to-the great Khan
si li dirent leur messagerie, et ce pourquoi il estoient
so to-him they-told their embassy and that wherefore they were
là venu. Le grant Kaan les reçut moult honnorablement,
there come The great Khan them received very honorably
et leur fist grant joie et grant feste. Puis envoia pour
and to-them made great joy and great feast Then he-sent for
une dame qui avoit à nom Cogatra, qui estoit du lignage
a lady who had as name Kökächin who was of-the lineage
à celle Royne Bolgara qui morte estoit. Et estoit joenne de
to that Queen Bolgana who dead was And she-was young of
.xvij. ans, moult bele dame et avenant. Et quant elle fut
seventeen years very fair lady and comely And when she was

venue, si dist aus .iij. barons que ceste estoit celle que il
come so he-said to-the three barons that this-one was she whom they
demandoient. Et cil respondirent que il leur plaisoit bien. Et,
asked And they answered that it them pleased well And
entretant, retorna Messire Marc d'Inde, qui estoit alez pour
meanwhile returned My-lord Mark from-India who was gone for
Embasaour du Seigneur. Et conta les diversités que il avoit
Ambassador of-the Lord And he-told the diversities which he had
veues en son chemin; et comment il estoit alez par moult
seen on his road and how he was gone through very
diverses mers. Et les .iij. barons qui orent veu Messire Nicole,
diverse seas And the three barons who had seen My-lord Nicholas
et Messire Maffe, et Messire Marc qui estoient latins et
and My-lord Maffeo and My-lord Mark who were Latins and
sages hommes à grant merveilles, si penserent entre euls
wise men to great marvels so thought between themselves
de mener les avec euls. Car leur entente estoit de retourner
of taking them with them For their intention was of returning
en leur pais par mer, pour la dame, pour le grant travail
into their country by sea for the lady for the great toil
qui est à cheminer tant par terre. Et d'autre part il les
which is at traveling so-much by land And of-other part they them
menerent volentiers avec euls pour ce que il savoient que
took willingly with them for this that they knew that
il avoient veu et seu et cerchie moult de la mer d'Inde,
they had seen and known and searched much of the sea of-India
et de ces contrées par là où il devoient aler; et
and of these countries through there where they must go and
proprement Messire Marc. Si alerent au grant Kaan, et li
especially My-lord Mark So they-went to-the great Khan and of-him
demanderent en grace que il envoiast avec euls les .iij. latins;
asked in grace that he should-send with them the three Latins

car il vouloient retorner par mer. Le Seigneur qui tant
for they wished to-return by sea The Lord who so-much
amoit ces .iij. latins, comme je vous ai conté, à moult grant
loved these three Latins as I to-you have told with very great
peine le fist, et donna congie aux .iij. latins, que il deussent
pain it did and gave leave to-the three Latins that they should
aler avec les .iij. barons, et pour compaignier la dame aussi.
go with the three barons and for to-accompany the lady also

VI · THE VOYAGE HOME; END OF THE PROLOGUE

The Khan gives the Latins two golden tablets and charges them with messages to the Pope and the kings of Christendom, and fits out thirteen four-masted ships. They sail three months to Java and eighteen months through the Indian sea; of six hundred souls only eight survive. Arghun is dead, so the lady is given to his son Ghazan, and Gaikhatu rules. Kökächin gives them four more tablets, they travel safely to Trebizond, Constantinople, and Negropont, and reach Venice in 1295. The book of the description now begins.

18 Comment les deux freres et Messire Marc se partirent
How the two brothers and My-lord Mark themselves departed
du grant Kaan.
from-the great Khan

Et quant le Seigneur vit que les .ij. freres et Messire Marc
And when the Lord saw that the two brothers and My-lord Mark
s'en devoient partir, si les fist venir touz trois devant
themselves-thence must depart so them he-had come all three before
soy, et leur donna .ij. tables d'or de commandement, que
himself and to-them gave two tablets of-gold of command that
il fussent franc par toute sa terre; et que là où il
they should-be free through all his land and that there where they

allaissent, que il eussent leur despens pour eus, et pour
should-go that they should-have their expenses for them and for
toute leur mesnie, de tout quanque il seussent commander.
all their household of all whatever they might-know command
Et leur encharga messagerie à l'Apostoille, et au Roy de
And them he-charged embassy to the-Pope and to-the King of
France, et au Roy d'Engleterre, et au Roy d'Espaigne, et
France and to-the King of-England and to-the King of-Spain and
aus autres Roys de Crestienté. Puis leur fist appareiller .xiij.
to-the other Kings of Christendom Then to-them he-had made-ready thirteen
nes, lesquelles avoient chascune .iiij. arbres, et maintez foiz
ships which had each four masts and many times
aloient à .xij. voiles. Et vous pourroie bien conter comment.
went with twelve sails And you I-could well tell how
Mes, pour ce que trop seroit longue matiere, ne le vous
But for this that too-much would-be long matter not it to-you
conterai pas ore, mes avant, quant temps et lieu en sera.
I-will-tell at-all now but later when time and place thereof will-be

Et quant les nes furent appareilliées, les .iij. barons et la
And when the ships were made-ready the three barons and the
dame et les .ij. freres, et Messire Marc, pristrent congie au
lady and the two brothers and My-lord Mark took leave of-the
grant Kaan, et se recueillirent en leur nes, à moult
great Khan and themselves gathered in their ships with very
grant gent; et leur despens du Seigneur pour .ij. ans. Il
great people and their expenses from-the Lord for two years They
se mistrent en la mer et nagerent bien .iij. mois tant que
themselves put on the sea and sailed fully three months until that
il vindrent à une isle qui est devers midi, qui a nom Java;
they came to an isle which is toward south which has name Java
en laquelle isle a maintes merveilles, lesquelles nous vous
in which isle there-are many marvels which we to-you

conterons ça avant tout appertement. Puis se partirent
will-tell here forward all openly Then themselves they-departed
de celle isle et nagerent par la mer d'Inde bien .xviij. moys,
from that isle and sailed through the sea of-India fully eighteen months
avant que il feussent venu là où il devoient. Et trouverent
before that they were come there where they must And they-found
maintes merveilleuses choses que nous raconterons en avant.
many marvelous things which we will-tell further on

Et quant il furent là venu, si trouverent que Argon
And when they were there come so they-found that Arghun
estoit mors, dont la dame fu donnée à Casan son filz.
was dead whence the lady was given to Ghazan his son
Et sachiez, sans faille, que quant il entrerent en mer, il
And know without fail that when they entered into sea they
furent bien .vj. cenz personnes, sans les mariniers. Tuit
were fully six hundred persons without the mariners All
morurent, qu'il n'en eschapa que .viij. Il trouverent
died so-that-there not-thereof escaped but eight They found
que la Seignorie tenoit Chiato. Il li recommanderent la
that the Lordship held Gaikhatu They to-him commended the
dame, et firent toute leur messagerie. Et quant les .ij. freres
lady and did all their embassy And when the two brothers
et Messire Marc orent fait leur messagerie, et tout l'afaire
and My-lord Mark had done their embassy and all the-business
que le grant Seigneur leur avoit commandé pour la dame,
that the great Lord them had commanded for the lady
il pristrent congie, et se partirent, et se mistrent
they took leave and themselves departed and themselves put
à la voie. Et, avant qu'il se partissent, Cogatra la
to the way And before that-they themselves departed Kökächin the
dame leur donna .iiij. tables d'or de commandement: les .ij.
lady to-them gave four tablets of-gold of command the two

de gerfaus, et l'une de lyons, et l'autre estoit plaine, qui
of gerfalcons and the-one of lions and the-other was plain which
disoit en leur lettre que ces .iij. messages fussent honneuré
said in their letter that these three envoys should-be honored
et servi par toute sa terre comme son corps meismes; et
and served through all his land as his body same and
que chevaus et toutes despenses et touz cous leur fussent
that horses and all expenses and all costs to-them should-be
donnez. Et certes ainsi leur fu il fait. Car il orent par
given And certainly thus to-them was it done For they had through
toute sa terre toutes choses besoignables bien et largement.
all his land all things needful well and largely
Car je vous di sanz faille que maintes foiz leur estoient
For I you tell without fail that many times to-them were
donné .cc. hommes à cheval, et plus et mains, selonc
given two-hundred men on horse and more and less according-to
ce que besoins leur estoit à aler seurement. Et que vous
that which need to-them was to go safely And what you
en diroie je? Quant il furent parti, si chevauchierent
thereof would-tell I When they were departed so they-rode
tant par leur journées que il furent venu à Trapesonde,
so-much by their day-journeys that they were come to Trebizond
et puis vindrent à Constantinoble; et de Constantinoble
and then came to Constantinople and from Constantinople
à Negrepont; et de Negrepont à Venisse. Et ce fu à
to Negropont and from Negropont to Venice And this was at
m.cc.lxxxxv. ans de l'incarnation de Crist.
a-thousand-two-hundred-ninety-five years of the-incarnation of Christ

Or puis que je vous ai conté tout le fait du
Now since that I to-you have told all the matter of-the
Prologue, ainsi comme vous avez ouy, si commenceray le
Prologue thus as you have heard so I-will-begin the
livre du devisement des diversités que Messire Marc trova.
book of-the description of-the diversities which My-lord Mark found

VII · THE TWO ARMENIAS AND TURCOMANIA

Of the two Armenias, the little one has a king subject to the Tartars, much game, an unhealthy air, and nobles who were once valiant and are now drunkards; to its port of Ayas come the spices and the silk and gold cloths of the Euphrates, and the merchants of Venice and Genoa come there to sell and buy. Turcomania has simple Turcoman herdsmen and Armenian and Greek craftsmen who weave the finest carpets in the world. Great Armenia, with Erzincan and Erzurum, has Noah's Ark on a great mountain and, toward Georgia, a spring of oil that burns and heals camels' mange.

19 Ci dist le commencement et premierement de la petite
Here tells the beginning and first of the little
Hermenie.
Armenia

Il est voirs que il sont .ij. Hermenies, une grant et une
It is true that there are two Armenias a great and a
petite. De la petite en est sires uns roys qui maintient bien
little Of the little thereof is lord a king who maintains well
sa terre en justice, et est souspost au Tartar. Il y a maintes
his land in justice and is subject to-the Tartar It there is many
villes et maint chasteaux, et y a de toutes choses grant
towns and many castles and there is of all things great
habondance. Encore est terre de grant deduit de toutes chaces
abundance Further it-is land of great delight of all hunts

de bestes et d'oiseaux. Mais je vous di qu'elle n'est pas saine
of beasts and of-birds But I you tell that-it not-is at-all healthy
province, mais enferme durement. Anciennement les gentilz
province but sick grievously Anciently the noble
homes estoient prodomes d'armes et vaillans, mais orendroit
men were worthy-men of-arms and valiant but now
sont cheitis et vilz, et n'ont nulle bonté; mais que il
they-are wretched and vile and not-they-have any goodness but that they
sont bons buveour et grant. Encore y a seur la mer une
are good drinkers and great Further there is upon the sea a
ville qui est appelée Laias, laquelle est de grant marcheandise;
town which is called Ayas which is of great merchandise
car sachiez que toute l'espicerie et draps de soie et dorés
for know that all the-spicery and cloths of silk and gilded
d'Eufratere se portent à ceste ville, et toutes autres
from-the-Euphrates themselves carry to this town and all other
choses. Et les marcheans de Venisse et de Jennes et de touz
things And the merchants of Venice and of Genoa and of all
autres pais y viennent et vendent la lor, et achatent ce
other countries there come and sell the theirs and buy that
que besoins leur est. Et chascun qui veut aler en Fratere,
which need to-them is And each who wishes to-go into the-Euphrates
ou marchans ou autres, prennent leur voie de ceste ville.
or merchants or others take their way from this town

Or vous avons conté de la petite Hermenie; si vous
Now to-you we-have told of the little Armenia so to-you
conterons de Turquemenie.
we-will-tell of Turcomania

20 Ci dist de la province de Turquemenie.

Here tells of the province of Turcomania

La Turquemenie a trois generations de gens. Ce sont

The Turcomania has three generations of people These are

Turquemans qui aorent Mahomet, et sont simple gent; et

Turcomans who worship Mohammed and are simple people and

ont leur langage. Il demorent en montaignes et en

they-have their language They dwell in mountains and in

landes là où il treuvent bonne pasture; car il vivent de

moors there where they find good pasture for they live from

bestial. Et si naist en ceste contrée moult bons chevaux qui

livestock And so is-born in this country very good horses which

s'appellent Turquans. Et les autres gens sont Hermins et Gres

themselves-call Turquans And the other people are Armenians and Greeks

qui melléement demeurent avec eux en villes et en chasteaux;

who mingled dwell with them in towns and in castles

et vivent de marchandise et d'ars; car il labourent les

and live from merchandise and from-crafts for they work the

plus fins tapis et les plus beaux du monde. Encor il

most fine carpets and the most beautiful of-the world Further they

labourent draps de soie de diverses couleurs moult beaux et

work cloths of silk of diverse colors very beautiful and

moult riches, en moult grant quantité, et d'autres choses

very rich in very great quantity and of-other things

assez. Leurs souveraines citez, si est le Conie, Savast, Caserie

plenty Their sovereign cities so is the Konya Sivas Kayseri

et maintes autres citez et chasteaux d'evesques que nous ne

and many other cities and castles of-bishops which we not

vous conterons pas ore; car trop seroit longue matiere. Il

to-you will-tell at-all now for too-much would-be long matter They

sont souspost au Tartar de Levant; et y met sa seigneurie.

are subject to-the Tartar of East and there puts his lordship

Or laisserons de ceste province et parlerons de la grant
Now we-will-leave of this province and will-speak of the great
Hermenie.
Armenia

Ci devise de la grant Hermenie. 21
Here describes of the great Armenia

La grant Hermenie si est une grant province. Elle
The great Armenia so is a great province It
commence de une cité qui est appellée Arsenga, en laquelle
begins from a city which is called Erzincan in which
se labourent les meilleurs bouguerans du monde. Et y
themselves work the best buckrams of-the world And there
a les plus beaux bains, et les meilleurs d'yaue sourdant du
are the most beautiful baths and the best of-water springing of-the
monde. Les gens sont Hermins et sont hommes du Tartar.
world The people are Armenians and are men of-the Tartar
Il y a maintes cités et mains chasteaux; mais la plus
It there is many cities and many castles but the most
noble [cité] est Arsenga, qui a archevesque; et deux autres:
noble city is Erzincan which has archbishop and two others
l'une Arsion et d'Arsisi. Elle est moult grant province. Et
the-one Erzurum and of-Arzizi It is very great province And
vous di que en l'esté demeure en ceste contrée tout l'ost
you I-tell that in the-summer dwells in this country all the-host
des Tartars du Levant, pour ce que il y treuvent moult
of-the Tartars of-the East for this that they there find very
bonne pasture à leurs bestes. Mais l'iver n'y demeurent
good pasture for their beasts But the-winter not-there they-dwell
pas, pour les grans froidures qui y sont outre mesure;
at-all for the great colds which there are beyond measure
et, pour ce, s'en partent l'iver, et s'en vont
and for this themselves-thence they-depart the-winter and themselves-thence go

en lieu chaut, là où il treuvent bonne pasture. Et si
into place hot there where they find good pasture And so
sachiez que en ceste grant Hermenie est l'Arche de Noe, sur
know that in this great Armenia is the-Ark of Noah upon
une grant montaigne. Elle fine de midi envers levant en un
a great mountain It ends from south toward east in a
royaume qui est appellez Mosul, qui sont crestiens Jacobins
kingdom which is called Mosul who are Christians Jacobites
et Nestorins, desquelz je vous conterai ça en avant. Devers
and Nestorians of-which I you will-tell here on forward Toward
tramontaigne fine aux Jorgans desquelz je vous conterai
north it-ends at-the Georgians of-which I you will-tell
encore avant. Et en celle fin devers Jorgans, sachiez que il
further later And in that end toward Georgians know that it
y a une fontaine qui sourt huille en moult grant quantité;
there is a fountain which springs oil in very great quantity
si que bien cent nes y pourroient bien chargier à une
so that fully hundred ships there could well load at one
foiz; mais elle n'est pas bonne à mengier; mais elle est
time but it not-is at-all good for eating but it is
bonne à ardoir et à oindre les chameulz pour la roigne.
good for burning and for anointing the camels for the mange
Et y viennent gens de moult loing pour ceste huille;
And there come people from very far for this oil
car, en toute la contrée ou environ n'ardent autre huille.
for in all the country or around not-they-burn other oil

Or laisserons de la grant Hermenie et vous conterons
Now we-will-leave of the great Armenia and you will-tell
de Jorganie.
of Georgia

The kings of Georgia are once said to have been born with an eagle on the right shoulder; the Georgians are Christians of the Greek rite, and their narrow pass by the sea is the Iron Gate that Alexander closed. The convent of Saint Leonard has a lake whose fish appear only in Lent, and the Caspian, which Genoese ships now sail, yields ghellé silk. The kingdom of Mosul holds Arabs, Nestorian and Jacobite Christians under their Catholicos, merchants who sell muslins, and robber Kurds in the mountains.

Ci dist de Jorganie et de leurs Roys. 22

Here tells of Georgia and of their Kings

En Jorganie a un roy qui est appelles Davit Melic, qui

In Georgia there-is a king who is called David Melic which

vaut autant à dire en françois Davit Roy; et est supost au

is-worth as-much to say in French David King and is subject to-the

Tartar. Et anciennement tous les roys naissoient avec un signe

Tartar And anciently all the kings were-born with a sign

d'aigle sus l'espaulle destre. Il sont belles gens et vaillans

of-eagle upon the-shoulder right They are fair people and valiant

d'armes, et bons archiers, et bons combateurs en bataille.

of-arms and good archers and good fighters in battle

Il sont crestien et tienent la loy grégoise. Il portent les

They are Christian and hold the law Greek They wear the

cheveus cours à maniere de clers; et ce est la province que

hairs short in manner of clerics and this is the province which

Alixandres ne pot passer quant il voult aler au ponent, por

Alexander not could pass when he wished to-go to-the west for

ce que la voie est estroite et douteuse; car de l'un lez est

this that the way is narrow and perilous for on the-one side is

une mer et de l'autre sont grant montaignes qui ne se

a sea and on the-other are great mountains which not themselves

peuvent chevauchier. Et dure ceste estroite voie plus de quatre
can ride And lasts this narrow way more than four
lieues; si que pou de gens tenroient le pas atout le monde.
leagues so that few of people would-hold the pass against the world
Et si vous di que Alixandres fist fermer une tour moult
And so you I-tell that Alexander had fortified a tower very
fort par quoi ces gens ne peussent passer pour venir seur
strong by which these people not could pass for to-come upon
lui. Et fu appellée la «Porte-de-fer.» Et ce est le lieu que
him And it-was called the Iron-Gate And this is the place which
le livre Alixandre conte comment il enclost les Tartars dedens
the book (of-)Alexander tells how he enclosed the Tartars within
deux montaignes. Et ce ne fu pas voirs que ce fussent
two mountains And this not was at-all true that these were
Tartars; mais estoient une gent qui s'appellent Commains, et
Tartars but they-were a people who themselves-call Cumans and
autres generations assez; car Tartars n'estoient à cellui temps.
other generations plenty for Tartars not-were at that time

Il y a villes et chasteaux assez, et ont soie à grant
It there is towns and castles plenty and they-have silk in great
habondance. Et si labourent draps d'or et de soie de
abundance And so they-work cloths of-gold and of silk of
toutes façons moult beaux. Il y a les meilleurs austours
all fashions very beautiful It there is the best goshawks
du monde. Il y a de toutes choses habondance, et
of-the world It there is of all things abundance and
vivent de marcheandise et d'art. La province est toute
they-live from merchandise and from-craft The province is all
plaine de montaignes, et de moult estroiz pas et fors.
full of mountains and of very narrow passes and strong

Si que je vous di que les Tatars ne porent onques avoir
So that I you tell that the Tartars not could ever have
toute la Seigneurie entierement.
all the Lordship entirely

Encore y a un monstier de Nonnains que on appelle
Further there is a minster of Nuns which one calls
Saint Lienart, où il y a une tel merveille comme je
Saint Leonard where it there is a such marvel as I
vous conterai. Il y a un grant lac pres de l'eglise, qui
to-you will-tell It there is a great lake near to the-church which
naist d'une montaigne où tout l'an ne se treuve point
springs from-a mountain where all the-year not itself finds whit
de poisson dedens, ne petit ne grant. Et quant vient au
of fish within nor small nor great And when comes to-the
premier jour de karesme, si treuve l'en dedens le plus
first day of Lent so finds one within the most
beau poisson du monde, et en grant quantité; et dure
beautiful fish of-the world and in great quantity and lasts
ce poisson tout le Karesme, jusques au Samedi Saint. Et
this fish all the Lent until to-the Saturday Holy And
puis n'en treuvent nul jusques à l'autre Karesme. Et
then not-thereof they-find any until to the-other Lent And
ainsi vait chascun an, si que ce est un grant miracle.
thus goes each year so that this is a great miracle

Ceste mer, que je vous di, si est pres as montaignes; si
This sea which I to-you tell so is near to-the mountains so
s'appelle «la mer de Gelachelan,» et dure bien environ sept
itself-calls the sea of Ghel-or-Ghelan and lasts fully about seven
cens mile; et est loings de toutes mers douze journées;
hundred miles and is far from all seas twelve day-journeys
et entre dedens ceste mer le grant flun d'Eufrates et
and enters within this sea the great river of-Euphrates and

pluseurs autres fluns; et est toute avironnée de montaignes.
several other rivers and is all surrounded by mountains
Et ore nouvellement les marchans de Gennes nagent par
And now newly the merchants of Genoa sail through
ceste mer, par nefz qu'il y ont porté et mis dedens;
this sea by ships that-they there have carried and put within
et d'illec vient la soie geele.
and from-there comes the silk ghellé

Or vous ai conté des fins de la grant Hermenie vers
Now to-you I-have told of-the ends of the great Armenia toward
tremontaigne; si vous conterons de l'autre fin qui est entre
north so to-you we-will-tell of the-other end which is between
midi et levant.
south and east

23 Ci dist du royaume de Mausul, qui est à la fin, entre
Here tells of-the kingdom of Mosul which is at the end between
midi et levant.
south and east

De l'autre fin qui est entre midi et levant est le royaume
Of the-other end which is between south and east is the kingdom
de Mausul; et est moult grant royaume; et y habitent
of Mosul and is very great kingdom and there dwell
pluseurs generations de gens, lesquelz nous vous deviserons.
several generations of people which we to-you will-describe

Il y a unes genz qui sont appelez Arrabis, qui aourent
It there is some people who are called Arabs who worship
Mahommet. Encore y a une autre maniere de genz crestiens
Mohammed Further there is an other manner of people Christians
Nestorins et Jacobins. Il ont patriarche que il appellent
Nestorians and Jacobites They have patriarch whom they call
Atolic; et cestui patriarche fait archevesques, et abbés, et
Catholicos and this patriarch makes archbishops and abbots and

touz autres prélaz et les envoie par toutes pars: en Inde
all other prelates and them sends through all parts into India
et en Baudas et au Cata, aussi comme fait l'Apostolle de
and into Baghdad and to-the Cathay also as does the-Pope of
Romme par les contrées des Latins. Car sachiez que touz les
Rome through the countries of-the Latins For know that all the
Crestiens qui sont en ces contrées de quoy il y a moult grant
Christians who are in these countries of which it there is very great
quantité, sont touz Jacobins et Nestorins crestiens, mais non
quantity are all Jacobites and Nestorians Christians but not
pas si comme commande l'Apostolle et l'Eglise de Romme;
at-all so as commands the-Pope and the-Church of Rome
car il faillent en pluseurs choses la foy. Et touz les draps à
for they fail in several things the faith And all the cloths of
or et à soie qui se font en ce pais s'appellent mosolins;
gold and of silk which themselves make in this country themselves-call muslins
et issent de ceste terre moult grans marcheans qui s'appellent
and issue from this land very great merchants who themselves-call
Mosolins, lesquels portent moult grant quantité d'espiecerie
Mosulins who carry very great quantity of-spicery
et de pelles, et de draps à or et de soie. Encore y a une
and of pearls and of cloths of gold and of silk Further there is an
autre maniere de gent qui habitent es montaignes de ces
other manner of people who dwell in-the mountains of these
contrées, qui s'appellent Card, qui sont Crestien et Sarrazin,
countries who themselves-call Kurds who are Christian and Saracen
moult mauvaise gent, qui robent volentiers les marchans.
very wicked people who rob willingly the merchants

Or laisserons de Mausul et parlerons de Baudas la grant
Now we-will-leave of Mosul and will-speak of Baghdad the great
cité.
city

IX · BAGHDAD AND THE CALIPH'S TREASURE

Baghdad, seat of the Caliph of all the Saracens, lies on a river that runs to the Indian sea by Basra and Kish, and weaves rich cloths of silk and gold. In 1255 Hülegü takes the city and finds a tower of the Caliph's treasure; asking why he hoarded it instead of paying soldiers, he shuts him in the tower to eat his gold, and the Caliph dies in four days. A Caliph of 1225 who hated the Christians found the gospel's saying about faith and the mountain, and gave them ten days to move a mountain, turn Saracen, or die.

24 Ci dist de Baudas la grant cité et comment elle fu prise.
Here tells of Baghdad the great city and how it was taken
Baudas est une grant cité là où estoit le Calife de touz
Baghdad is a great city there where was the Caliph of all
les Sarrazins du monde, ainsi comme est à Romme le Siege
the Saracens of-the world thus as is at Rome the See
du Pape des Crestiens. Et parmi la cité court un moult
of-the Pope of-the Christians And through the city runs a very
grant flun; et par ce flun puet on aler en la mer d'Inde qui
great river and by this river can one go into the sea of-India which
a bien .xviij. journées de Baudas; si que moult grant quantité
is fully eighteen day-journeys from Baghdad so that very great quantity
de marcheans y vont et viennent avec leur marchandises et
of merchants there go and come with their merchandise and
arrivent en une cité qui a nom Chisy; et d'illec entrent
arrive in a city which has name Kish and from-there they-enter
en la mer d'Inde. Encore y a sus le flun entre Baudas et
into the sea of-India Further there is upon the river between Baghdad and
Chisy une grant cité qui a nom Basçra. Et tout environ la
Kish a great city which has name Basra And all around the
cité, par les bois, naissent les meilleurs dates du monde.
city through the woods grow the best dates of-the world

En Baudas se labourent de moult de façons de draps de
In Baghdad themselves work of many of fashions of cloths of
soie et à or; ce sont nasich et nac et quermesis et de
silk and of gold these are nasich and nac and cramoisy and of
mains autres draps de moult belle façon. Elle est la plus
many other cloths of very beautiful fashion It is the most
noble cité et la greignor qui soit en toutes ces parties.
noble city and the greatest which be in all these parts

Il fu un jour que, à .m.cc.lv. ans de Crist, le
It was a day that at a-thousand-two-hundred-fifty-five years of Christ the
Seigneur des Tatars du levant qui Alaou avoit à nom, qui fu
Lord of-the Tartars of-the east who Hülegü had as name who was
frere au grant Kaan qui orendroit regne, assembla un moult
brother to-the great Khan who now reigns assembled a very
grant ost, et vint seur Baudas et la prist à force. Et ce fu bien
great host and came upon Baghdad and it took by force And this was very
grant chose que en Baudas avoit plus de .c.m. (cent
great thing for in Baghdad there-was more than a-hundred-thousand a-hundred
mille) à cheval sans les hommes à pié. Et quant il l'ost prise
thousand on horse without the men on foot And when he it-had taken
il trouva au Caliphe une tour toute plaine d'or et d'argent,
he found to-the Caliph a tower all full of-gold and of-silver
et d'autre tresor. Et ce fu la plus grant quantité ensamble
and of-other treasure And this was the most great quantity together
que on seust onques en nul lieu. Quant il vit ce grant tresor
that one knew ever in any place When he saw this great treasure
ensamble, si en ot moult grant merveille. Si manda pour le
together so thereof had very great wonder So he-sent for the
Caliphe et le fist venir devant lui et li dist: «Caliphe, ore
Caliph and him had come before him and to-him said Caliph now
me di pourquoi avoies tu amassé si grant tresor? Que en
me tell why hadst thou amassed so great treasure What therewith

devoies tu faire? Ne savoies tu que je estoie ton anemi, et
wast thou to-do Not knewest thou that I was thy enemy and
que je venoie sus toy à si grant ost pour toi desheriter?
that I came upon thee with so great host for thee to-disinherit
Pourquoi ne preis tu ton avoir et l'eusses donné aux chevaliers
Why not tookest thou thy wealth and it-hadst given to-the knights
et as soldaiers genz d'armes pour toi deffendre et ta cité?»
and to-the soldiers men of-arms for thee to-defend and thy city

Et li Caliphe ne li sot que respondre et n'en
And the Caliph not to-him knew what answer and not-thereof
parla riens. Si li dist le Seigneur: «Or, Caliphe, puis
spoke anything So to-him said the Lord Now Caliph since
que je voi que tu amas tant le tresor, si le te vueil
that I see that thou lovest so-much the treasure so it to-thee I-wish
donner à mengier comme le tien meismes.» Si le fist
to-give to eat as the thine own So him he-had
prendre et metre dedens la tour du tresor, et commanda
taken and put within the tower of-the treasure and commanded
que nulle chose ne li fust donnée à mengier ne à
that any thing not to-him should-be given to eat nor to
boivre, et li dist: «Or, Caliphe, mengue tant de ton
drink and to-him said Now Caliph eat as-much of thy
tresor comme tu voudras, puisque il te plaisoit tant; car
treasure as thou wilt since it thee pleased so-much for
jamais ne mengeras autre chose que de cest tresor.»
ever-more not thou-shalt-eat other thing than of this treasure

Si demoura laiens quatre jours et morut comme chetif. Et
So he-remained in-there four days and died as wretch And
pour ce eust miex valu au Caliphe que il eust donné
for this would-have better been-worth to-the Caliph that he had given
et parti son tresor as hommes qui l'eussent deffendu
and shared his treasure to-the men who him-would-have defended

de sa terre, et ses genz, que estre pris et desheritez et
of his land and his people than be taken and disinherited and
mort; si comme il fu. Et depuis, en avant, il n'y ot
dead so as he was And since on forward it not-there was
onques puis nul Caliphe, ne à Baudas, ne à nul autre lieu.
ever since any Caliph nor at Baghdad nor at any other place

Or vous vueil conter une moult grant miracle qui avint
Now to-you I-wish to-tell a very great miracle which happened
à Baudas, que Diex fist pour les Crestiens.
at Baghdad which God did for the Christians

Ci dist de la merveille que avint à Baudas de la 25
Here tells of the marvel which happened at Baghdad of the
montaigne.
mountain

Il fu voirs que entre Baudas et Mausul avint que
It was true that between Baghdad and Mosul it-happened that
un Caliphe qui estoit à Baudas au temps que couroit
a Caliph who was at Baghdad at-the time that ran
.m.cc.xxv. (1225) ans de Crist, qui moult haoit
a-thousand-two-hundred-twenty-five 1225 years of Christ who much hated
les Crestiens, qui jour et nuit pensoit comment il peust
the Christians who day and night thought how he could
faire retorner les Crestiens à sa loy, qui estoient en sa terre,
make return the Christians to his law who were in his land
ou, se non, faire les mourir. Et de ce se conseilloit
or if not make them die And of this himself he-counseled
toujours à ses prestres de sa loy, car touz ensamble leur
always with his priests of his law for all together them
vouloient aussi moult grant mal. Et ce est chose veritable
wished also very great harm And this is thing true

que touz les Sarrazins du monde vouloient toujours moult
that all the Saracens of-the world wished always very
grant mal à touz les Crestiens du monde.
great harm to all the Christians of-the world

Or avint que le Caliphe avec ses sages prestres
Now it-happened that the Caliph with his wise priests
trouverent un tel point en une nostre evangille, comme je
found a such point in a our gospel as I
vous dirai, qui dist que se il fust uns Crestiens qui eust
to-you will-tell which says that if there were a Christian who had
tant de foy comme est le grain d'un senevé, et deist à
so-much of faith as is the grain of-a mustard-seed and said to
une montaigne qu'elle se levast, elle se leveroit. Et certes,
a mountain that-it itself should-raise it itself would-raise And certainly
ainsi est la verité. Et quand il orent ce point trouvé, si
thus is the truth And when they had this point found so
orent moult grant joie, car ce estoit bien chose de faire
they-had very great joy for this was well thing of making
les touz tourner à leur loy, ou faire les tous mourir. Si
them all turn to their law or make them all die So
manda adonc le Caliphe touz les Crestiens de sa terre qui
summoned then the Caliph all the Christians of his land who
moult furent grant quantité. Et quant il furent devant lui
very were great quantity And when they were before him
[venu], il leur moustra celle evangille et leur fist lire
come he to-them showed that gospel and to-them had read
le point qui est dedens, que je vous ai dit. Et quant
the point which is within which I to-you have said And when
il l'orent leu, si demanda se ce estoit voirs. Les Crestiens
they it-had read so he-asked if this was true The Christians
respondirent que voirement estoit il [ainsi]. Or depuis que
answered that truly was it so Now since that

vous dites, dist le Caliphe, que il est voirs, dont vous
you say said the Caliph that it is true then to-you
ferai une partie telle, car bien doit avoir entre vous,
I-will-make a choice such for well must there-be among you
qui estes tant de gent, ce petit de foy: ou vous ferez
who are so-much of people this little of faith either you will-make
remuer celle montaigne que vous veez là; (et leur moustra
move that mountain which you see there and to-them he-showed
au doi qui pres d'illec estoit,) ou je vous ferai tuit
with-the finger which near from-there was or I you will-make all
morir de male mort. Et se vous voulez eschaper de la
die of evil death And if you wish to-escape from the
mort, si devenez tuit Sarrazin de notre bonne loy. Et à ce
death so become all Saracen of our good law And at this
faire, vous donne je respit dix jours. Et se à celui termine
doing to-you give I respite ten days And if at that term
n'est fait, ou vous morrez ou vous retornerez Sarrazins.»
not-it-is done either you will-die or you will-turn Saracens
Et quand il leur ot ce dit, si les congéa, que il
And when he to-them had this said so them he-dismissed that they
deussent aler penser seur leur besoigne à ce fait accomplir.
should go think upon their business at this deed to-accomplish

X · THE COBBLER MOVES THE MOUNTAIN

The Christians pray eight days and nights, and an angel tells a bishop that a one-eyed cobbler must pray; he had put out his own eye with his awl rather than sin when a woman's fair foot tempted him. On the day, a hundred thousand Christians go in procession with the cross before the Caliph and his host. The cobbler prays, and the mountain rises and moves where the Caliph commanded. Many Saracens are baptized, and the Caliph in secret; a cross found on his neck at his death has him buried apart from the other Caliphs.

26 Comment les Crestiens orent grant paour de ce que le
How the Christians had great fear of this which the
Caliphe lor avoit dit.
Caliph to-them had said

Quant les Crestiens orent entendu ce que le Caliphe
When the Christians had heard that which the Caliph
leur avoit dit, si orent moult grant paour; mais ceste fois
to-them had said so they-had very great fear but this time
mistrent toute lor esperance en Dieu leur createur que il
they-put all their hope in God their creator that he
les aidera de cest grant peril. Si furent à conseil touz les
them will-aid from this great peril So they-were at council all the
sages Crestiens qui là estoient, que il y avoit evesques
wise Christians who there were for it there was bishops
et prestres assez; et n'en porent autre chose faire, mais
and priests plenty and not-thereof could other thing do but
que tourner par devers celui par qui touz biens vient; que
than turn toward to him by whom all goods comes that
par sa pitié les deffende des mains au cruel Caliphe.
by his pity them he-defend from-the hands of-the cruel Caliph

Si furent touz ensamble et hommes et fames en oroisons
So they-were all together both men and women in prayers
.viij. jours et huit nuis. Et au chief des huit jours vint
eight days and eight nights And at-the end of-the eight days came
avision à un evesque, qui estoit moult bon crestien, «par le
vision to a bishop who was very good Christian by the
saint angle du Ciel, que il deist à un savetier crestien,»
holy angel of-the Heaven that he should-tell to a cobbler Christian
qui n'avoit que un oeil, de faire la priere à Dieu; et
who not-had but one eye of making the prayer to God and
que par sa bonté Diex accomplira la priere que il avoient
that by his goodness God will-accomplish the prayer which they had
fait pour la sainteté au savetier.
made for the holiness of-the cobbler

Or vous dirai de cel savetier quel homme il estoit. Sachiez
Now to-you I-will-tell of that cobbler what man he was Know
que moult menoit honneste vie et chaste; et junoit, et ne
that much he-led honest life and chaste and he-fasted and not
fesoit nul pechié; et chascun jour aloit oir messe à l'eglise; et
did any sin and each day he-went hear mass at the-church and
donnoit chascun jour pour Dieu de son gaaing. Et la choison
gave each day for God of his gain And the cause
pourquoy il n'avoit que un oeil, fu ceste: Il avint que un
wherefore he not-had but one eye was this It happened that one
jour vint une fame à lui pour faire lui uns sollers, et li
day came a woman to him for make her a-pair-of shoes and to-him
monstra son pié por prendre la mesure. Et elle avoit moult
showed her foot for to-take the measure And she had very
bele jambe et moult beau pié. Si s'escandaliza trestout en sa
fair leg and very fair foot So himself-he-scandalized wholly in his
conscience de pechié. Et il, pluseurs foiz, avoit oï dire, en la
conscience of sin And he several times had heard say in the

sainte evangile, que se l'oeil dehors escandalizoit la conscience
holy gospel that if the-eye outside scandalized the conscience
[dedens], de traire le hors de la teste maintenant, avant que
within of drawing it out of the head at-once before than
pechier. Et il ainsi fist que depuis que la fame se fu partie,
sin And he thus did that since that the woman herself was departed
si prist l'alesne de quoi il cousoit, et s'en donna parmi
so he-took the-awl with which he sewed and himself-thence gave through
l'oeil; si que il le creva, et ainsi perdi son oeil par ceste maniere.
the-eye so that he it put-out and thus lost his eye by this manner

Or veez se il estoit saint homme et juste et de bonne
Now see if he was holy man and just and of good
vie.
life

27 Comment vint à l'evesque l'avision du savetier qui n'avoit
How came to the-bishop the-vision of-the cobbler who not-had
qu'un œil.
but-one eye

Quant celle avision fu venue à cel evesque par pluseurs
When that vision was come to that bishop by several
foiz, si comme vous avez ouy, que j'ai conté ci avant; si dist
times so as you have heard which I-have told here before so said
un jour aus Crestiens tout le fait de la vision; comment il
one day to-the Christians all the matter of the vision how he
l'avoit veu par pluseurs foiz. Si s'acorderent tuit ensemble, les
it-had seen by several times So themselves-agreed all together the
Crestiens, à faire venir devant euls ledit savetier. Et quant
Christians to have come before them the-said cobbler And when
il fu là venuz, si li distrent que il veulent que il face
he was there come so to-him they-said that they wish that he make
la priere; et que Dieu lor avoit promis d'acomplir la par
the prayer and that God to-them had promised of-accomplishing it through

lui. Et quant il oï ce que l'en li disoit, il s'escusa
him And when he heard that which one to-him said he himself-excused
moult, disant que il n'estoit pas si bon homme comme
much saying that he not-was at-all so good man as
il li disoient. Mais tant li prierent doucement que il
they to-him said But so-much him they-begged sweetly that he
dist que pour lui ne demoura de faire leur commandement.
said that for him not remained of doing their command

Comment la priere d'icelui saint homme savetier fist 28
How the prayer of-that holy man cobbler made
mouvoir la montagne.
move the mountain

Et quant le jour du terme fu venus si se leverent
And when the day of-the term was come so themselves rose
des Crestiens le matin tuit, hommes et fames, petiz et
of-the Christians the morning all men and women small and
granz, qui estoient plus de .c.m. (cent mille)
great who were more than a-hundred-thousand a-hundred thousand
personnes; et alerent à l'eglise, et oïrent la sainte messe.
persons and went to the-church and heard the holy mass
Et quant la messe fu chantée, si se mistrent tuit
And when the mass was sung so themselves they-put all
ensemble à la voie à aler au plain pres de cele montaigne
together to the way to go to-the plain near to that mountain
à grant pourcession avec la precieuse croiz devant eulx,
with great procession with the precious cross before them
à grans chans et à grans larmes. Et quant il furent
with great chants and with great tears And when they were
là venu, si trouverent là le Caliphe avec tout son ost de
there come so they-found there the Caliph with all his host of
Sarrazins touz appareilliez d'eulx occire, ou de tourner à leur
Saracens all made-ready of-them to-kill or of turning to their

loy; car il ne cuidoient mie que Diex feist ceste grace
law for they not thought at-all that God would-do this grace
aus Crestiens. Li Crestien avoient moult grant paour. Mais
to-the Christians The Christians had very great fear But
toutes voies avoient leur esperance vers Dieu Jhesu Crist.
all the-same they-had their hope toward God Jesus Christ

Si prist le savetier la beneicon de l'evesque, et puis se
So took the cobbler the blessing of the-bishop and then himself
geta à terre à genoulx devant le signe de la sainte croiz, et
threw to ground on knees before the sign of the holy cross and
tendi ses mains vers le Ciel, et fist ceste oroison: «Biax sires
stretched his hands toward the Heaven and made this prayer Fair lord
Diex omnipotent, je te pri que, par ta sainte bonté, doies
God omnipotent I thee pray that by thy holy goodness thou-shouldst
faire ceste grace à ce tien pueple, à ce que il ne muirent, ne
do this grace to this thine people to this that they not may-die nor
que ta foy ne soit abatue, ne empirée, ne desprisiée. Non mie
that thy faith not be cast-down nor worsened nor despised Not at-all
que je soie dignes de te prier ne requerre. Mais ta puissance
that I be worthy of thee to-pray nor request But thy power
est si grant, et ta misericorde, pour quoy tu orras ceste
is so great and thy mercy for which thou wilt-hear this
miene priere de moy qui suis ton serf plain de pechiez.»
my prayer from me who am thy servant full of sins

Et quant il ot faite sa priere et s'oroison vers Dieu
And when he had made his prayer and his-orison toward God
le souverain pere par qui toutes graces sont acomplies,
the sovereign father by whom all graces are accomplished
maintenant voiant le Caliphe et touz les Sarrazins et autre
at-once seeing the Caliph and all the Saracens and other
gent qui estoient là, se leva la montaigne de son lieu, et ala
people who were there itself raised the mountain from its place and went

là où le Caliphe leur avoit fait commandement. Et quant
there where the Caliph them had made command And when
le Caliphe et touz les Sarrazins virent ce, si demorerent touz
the Caliph and all the Saracens saw this so remained all
esbahiz et orent moult grant merveille de cest miracle que
astonished and had very great wonder of this miracle which
Diex avoit accompli pour les Crestiens. Si que grant quantité
God had accomplished for the Christians So that great quantity
de Sarrasins devindrent crestien; et proprement le Caliphe
of Saracens became Christian and especially the Caliph
se fist baptisier el nom du Pere et du Filz et du Saint
himself had baptized in-the name of-the Father and of-the Son and of-the Holy
Esprit Diex, amen; et devint crestiens; mais ce fu celéement.
Spirit God amen and became Christian but this was secretly
Car quant il morut il trouverent une petite croiz à son col
For when he died they found a little cross at his neck
pendant. Si que pour ce ne le voudrent ensevelir les Sarrazins
hanging So that for this not him they-wished to-bury the Saracens
avec les autres Caliphes, mais le mistrent à part des autres.
with the other Caliphs but him put at part from-the others
Les Crestiens orent moult grant joie de cest grant saintisme
The Christians had very great joy of this great most-holy
miracle et s'en retournerent faisant moult grant feste,
miracle and themselves-thence returned making very great feast
rendant grace à leur createur de ce que il leur avoit fait.
rendering thanks to their creator for this that he to-them had done

En telle maniere ala ce fait comme vous avez ouy, de
In such manner went this deed as you have heard of
quoy ce fu moult grant miracle. Et ne vous merveilliez se
which this was very great miracle And not you marvel if
les Sarrazins heent les Crestiens; car leur maldite loy que
the Saracens hate the Christians for their accursed law which

Mahommet leur donna, si commande que touz les maus que
Mohammed to-them gave so commands that all the harms which
il pueent faire à toutes manieres de genz, et proprement
they can do to all manners of people and especially
aux Crestiens, que il le doivent faire et d'embler le leur, et
to-the Christians that they it must do and of-stealing the theirs and
de touz autres maus, puisque il ne sont de leur loy; et que
of all other harms since they not are of their law and what
mauvaise [loy] et mauvais commandemenz il ont; et touz les
wicked law and wicked commandments they have and all the
Sarrazins du monde se maintiennent en ceste maniere.
Saracens of-the world themselves maintain in this manner

Or vous avons conté de Baudas; mais bien vous pourroie
Now to-you we-have told of Baghdad but well you I-could
avoir premierement conté de leur afaires, et de leur
have first told of their affairs and of their
coustumes; mais trop seroit longue matiere, pour ce que
customs but too-much would-be long matter for this that
je vous conterai ci avant des grans choses et merveilleuses,
I to-you will-tell here forward of-the great things and marvelous
si comme vous pourrez entendre en ce livre tout apertement.
so as you will-be-able hear in this book all openly

Si vous conterai ore de Tavris la noble cité.
So to-you I-will-tell now of Tabriz the noble city

XI · TABRIZ AND THE THREE KINGS

Tabriz in Iraq is a city of merchants and craftsmen, trading with India, Baghdad, Mosul, and Hormuz, where Genoese and other Latins come to buy; its gardens are full of fruit. In Persia, wasted by the Tartars, the three Kings who worshiped Christ lie whole in three tombs at Saveh. Three days on, the castle of the fire-worshipers tells their story: they brought gold, incense, and myrrh to learn whether the child was king, god, or healer. Each alone saw him at his own age; together they found a child of thirteen days, who took all three gifts and gave them a closed box.

Ci devise de la noble cité de Tavris. 29

Here describes of the noble city of Tabriz

Tavris est une grant cité et noble qui est en une

Tabriz is a great city and noble which is in a

grant province qui s'appelle Yrac, (et ainsi a tel nom) en

great province which itself-calls Iraq and thus has such name in

laquelle a pluseurs citez et chasteaux. Mais pour ce

which there-are several cities and castles But for this

que Tavris est la plus noble, vous conterai de son afaire.

that Tabriz is the most noble to-you I-will-tell of its affair

Il est voirs que les hommes de Tavris vivent de marchandise

It is true that the men of Tabriz live from merchandise

et d'art; car il labourent de toutes manieres draps de

and from-craft for they work of all manners cloths of

soie et dorés, de pluseurs façons moult beaux et de grant

silk and gilded of several fashions very beautiful and of great

vaillance. La cité est si bien assise que d'Inde et de Baudas

worth The city is so well seated that from-India and from Baghdad

et de Mausul et de Cremesor, et de mainz autres lieus y

and from Mosul and from Hormuz and from many other places there

viennent les marchandises. Si que, pour ce y viennent pluseurs

come the merchandises So that for this there come several

marchans latins, et proprement Genevois, pour acheter et pour
merchants Latin and especially Genoese for to-buy and for
faire leur afaire; car il s'y treuve aussi grant quantité de
to-do their business for it itself-there finds also great quantity of
pierrerie. Elle est cité, que les marchans y font moult leur
precious-stones It is city that the merchants there make much their
profit. Il sont gent de povre afaire, et sont moult mellées
profit They are people of poor affair and are much mingled
de maintes manieres. Il y a Hermins, Nestorins, Jacobins,
of many manners It there is Armenians Nestorians Jacobites
Jorgans, Persans; et encore hommes qui aourent Mahommet,
Georgians Persians and further men who worship Mohammed
et c'est le pueple de la cité. Et sont moult mauvaises genz,
and this-is the people of the city And they-are very wicked people
et s'appellent Touzi. La ville est toute avironnée de moult
and themselves-call Tauzi The town is all surrounded with very
beaux jardins et delitables, plains de moult beaux fruiz de
beautiful gardens and delightful full of very fine fruits of
pluseurs manieres moult bons, et assez de grant maniere.
several manners very good and plenty of great manner

Or laissons de Tavris et vous conterons de la grant
Now we-leave of Tabriz and you will-tell of the great
province de Perse.
province of Persia

30 Ci commence de la grant province de Perse.
Here begins of the great province of Persia

Perse est une grant province, laquelle anciennement fu
Persia is a great province which anciently was
moult noble et de moult grant afaire. Mais orendroit l'ont
very noble and of very great affair But now it-have
gastée et destruite les Tatars. En Perse est la cité qui
wasted and destroyed the Tartars In Persia is the city which

est apelée Saba, de laquelle se partirent les trois Roys
is called Saveh from which themselves departed the three Kings
quant il vinrent aourer Jhesu Crist; car il sont enseveli
when they came worship Jesus Christ for they are buried
en ceste cité, en trois sepulcres moult grant et beaux.
in this city in three sepulchers very great and beautiful
Et dessus chascun sepulcre a une maison quarrée moult
And above each sepulcher there-is a house square very
bien enquierée dessus; et l'une jouste l'autre. Les corps
well wrought above and the-one beside the-other The bodies
sont encore tout entier; et ont cheveus et barbes. L'un
are still all whole and have hairs and beards The-one
avoit nom Jaspar, l'autre Melchior; le tiers: Balthazar. Et
had name Caspar the-other Melchior the third Balthazar And
ledit Messire Marc Pol demanda moult à ceux de cele cité
the-said My-lord Mark Pol asked much of those of that city
de l'etre d'eux trois roys; mais il n'en trouva nul qui
of the-being of-those three kings but he not-thereof found any who
riens l'en seust dire, mais que il estoient trois roys
anything thereof might-know say but that they were three kings
qui anciennement y furent seveli. Mais à trois journées
who anciently there were buried But at three day-journeys
aprist ce que je vous dirai, que il trouva un chastel
he-learned that which I to-you will-tell that he found a castle
qui est apelés Cala Ataperistan, qui est à dire en françois:
which is called Cala Ataperistan which is to say in French
«chasteaux qui est des aourours de feu.» Et ce est bien
castle which is of-the worshipers of fire And this is well
leur nom, car les gens de ce chastel aourent le feu, et
their name for the people of this castle worship the fire and
vous dirai pourquoy il l'aourent, si comme il dient que
to-you I-will-tell why they it-worship so as they say that

anciennement leur trois roys de celle contrée alerent aourer
anciently their three kings of that country went worship
un prophete qui estoit nez, et porterent trois offrandes: or
a prophet who was born and carried three offerings gold
et encens et mirre, «pour cognoistre se celui prophete estoit
and incense and myrrh for to-know if that prophet was
dieu, ou roy terrien ou mire.» Car il distrent se il prenoit
god or king earthly or physician For they said if he took
l'or que il seroit roy terrien; et se il prenoit l'encens que
the-gold that he would-be king earthly and if he took the-incense that
il seroit dieu; et se il prenoit le mirre que il seroit mire.
he would-be god and if he took the myrrh that he would-be physician

Or avint que quant il furent là venu, là où l'enfant
Now it-happened that when they were there come there where the-child
estoit nez, le plus jeunes de ces trois roys y entra avant, et
was born the most young of these three kings there entered first and
trouva l'enfant semblable à soy meismes d'aage. Si issi hors
found the-child like to himself same in-age So he-went out
et en ot moult grant merveille. Et apres y entra l'autre
and thereof had very great wonder And after there entered the-other
de moien aage; et tout ainsi li sembla, comme à l'autre,
of middle age and all thus to-him it-seemed as to the-other
de son aage meismes. Et issi hors, et en soy avoit moult
of his age own And he-went out and in himself had much
merveille. Puis y entra l'autre de plus grant aage; et tout
wonder Then there entered the-other of more great age and all
ainsi li avint comme as autres deux devant. Si issi
thus to-him it-happened as to-the others two before So he-went
hors moult pensif. Et quant il furent tous trois assemblé, si
out very thoughtful And when they were all three assembled so
dist chascuns ce que il avoit trouvé et veu; et de ce orent
said each that which he had found and seen and of this had

il moult grant merveille. Si s'acorderent d'aler tous trois
they very great wonder So themselves-they-agreed of-going all three
ensemble. Si y alerent. Si trouverent l'enfant de l'aage que il
together So there they-went So they-found the-child of the-age that he
estoit; ce est de treize jours. Si l'aourerent et li offrirent
was this is of thirteen days So him-they-worshiped and to-him offered
l'or, et l'encens, et le mirre. Et l'enfant prist toutes
the-gold and the-incense and the myrrh And the-child took all
trois les offrandes; et puis leur donna une boiste close. Si
three the offerings and then to-them gave a box closed So
s'en partirent les roys pour retourner en leur contrées.
themselves-thence departed the kings for to-return into their countries

XII · THE FIRE FROM HEAVEN; THE KINGDOMS OF PERSIA

Opening the child's closed box on their way home, the Kings find a stone, not knowing it meant their faith should be firm, and throw it into a well; fire falls from heaven into it, and they carry the fire home and worship it still. Persia has eight kingdoms, from Kazvin to Tun-and-Kain beside the Solitary Tree. They breed fine asses and chargers worth some two hundred pounds, the horses sent to India by Kish and Hormuz, but murderous people would rob the merchants if the Tartars did not rule them.

Ci dist des trois Roys qui retournerent. 31
Here tells of-the three Kings who returned
Quant il orent chevauchié pluseurs journées, si dirent
When they had ridden several day-journeys so they-said
que il vouloient veoir ce que l'enfant leur avoit donné. Si
that they wished to-see that which the-child them had given So
ouvrirent la boiste et trouverent dedens une pierre. Quant
they-opened the box and found within a stone When

il la virent, si orent grant merveille que ce povoit estre que
they it saw so they-had great wonder what this could be that
l'enfant leur avoit donné, et pour quelle signifiance. Et la
the-child them had given and for what significance And the
signifiance fu pour ce que quant il presenterent à l'enfant
significance was for this that when they presented to the-child
leur offrandes, si les prist toutes trois [et il distrent que,
their offerings so them he-took all three and they said that
puisque il les avoit prises toutes trois], que il estoit vrais diex,
since he them had taken all three that he was true god
et vrais roys, et vrais mires; et que la foy que il avoient
and true king and true physician and that the faith which they had
commenciée devoit estre ferme en euls comme pierre ferme.
begun must be firm in them as stone firm
Si que, pour cele achoison orent de l'enfant la pierre en cele
So that for that occasion they-had from the-child the stone in that
senefiance; car il sot bien leur pensées. Et euls qui ne sorent
significance for he knew well their thoughts And they who not knew
pas que la pierre portoit ladite senefiance; si la getterent en
at-all that the stone bore the-said significance so it threw into
un puis. Et de maintenant descendi du Ciel un feu ardant
a well And from at-once descended from-the Heaven a fire burning
qui descendi ou puis là où la pierre avoit esté getée.
which descended into-the well there where the stone had been thrown

Et quant les trois roys virent ceste merveille, si furent tuit
And when the three kings saw this marvel so they-were all
esbahiz et furent moult repentant de ce que il avoient la pierre
astonished and were very repentant of this that they had the stone
getée; car bien aperçurent adonc la senefiance qui estoit grans
thrown for well they-perceived then the significance which was great
et bonne. Il pristrent maintenant de cel feu, et l'emporterent
and good They took at-once of that fire and it-carried-off

en leur pais; et le mistrent en une leur eglise moult belle et
into their country and it put in a their church very beautiful and
moult riche. Et toutefoiz le font ardre et l'aourent comme
very rich And always it they-make burn and it-worship as
dieu, et tout leur sacrefice que il font, cuise avec cel feu.
god and all their sacrifice which they make they-cook with that fire
Et se il avient aucune foiz que le feu soit estaint, il vont
And if it happens some time that the fire be extinguished they go
aux autres cités là entour, qui celle meismes foy tiennent, et
to-the other cities there around which that same faith hold and
se font donner de leur feu, et le portent en leur eglise. Et
themselves have given of their fire and it carry into their church And
c'est la choison, pourquoi les gens de ceste contrée aourent le
this-is the cause wherefore the people of this country worship the
feu. Et maintes foiz il vont dix journées à trouver de ce feu.
fire And many times they go ten day-journeys to find of this fire

Et ainsi le conterent ceux de cellui chasteau à Messire
And thus it told those of that castle to My-lord
Marc Pol, et lui affermerent par verité que ainsi avoit
Mark Pol and to-him affirmed by truth that thus it-had
esté, et que l'un des trois roys avoit esté d'une cité qui
been and that the-one of-the three kings had been from-a city which
a nom Saba, et l'autre de Ava, et le tiers de cellui
has name Saveh and the-other from Avah and the third from that
chasteau, où il aouroient le feu avec toute celle contrée.
castle where they worshiped the fire with all that country

Or vous ai conté de ce; si vous conterons des contrées
Now to-you I-have told of this so to-you we-will-tell of-the countries
de Perse et de leur coustumes.
of Persia and of their customs

32 Ci devise des huit royaumes de Perse et des noms
Here describes of-the eight kingdoms of Persia and of-the names
d'iceulx.
of-them

Or sachiez que en Perse a .viii. royaumes pour ce
Now know that in Persia there-are eight kingdoms for this
que elle est grans provinces; et si les vous nommerai touz
that it is great province and so them to-you I-will-name all
par nom.
by name

Le premier royaume c'est au commencement. Si a nom
The first kingdom it-is at-the beginning So it-has name
Casvin; le secont, qui est vers midi, est appellez Curdistan;
Kazvin the second which is toward south is called Kurdistan
le tiers est apellez Lor; le quart Cielstan; le quint Istanit; le
the third is called Lor the fourth Shulistan the fifth Isfahan the
sisiesme Serasy; le septiesme Sonscara; le vuitiesme Tunocain,
sixth Shiraz the seventh Shabankara the eighth Tun-and-Kain
qui est à l'issue de Perse. Touz ces royaumes sont vers midi,
which is at the-issue of Persia All these kingdoms are toward south
fors .i. seulement: c'est Tunocain, qui est pres de l'arbre seul.
except one only this-is Tun-and-Kain which is near to the-tree solitary

En cel royaume a mains beaux destriers; et pluseurs
In that kingdom there-are many fine chargers and several
s'en mainent en Inde à vendre; car il sont chevaux
themselves-thence lead into India to sell for they are horses
de grant vaillance, que bien vaut, l'un, de celle monnoie
of great worth so-that well is-worth the-one of that money
tant qui vaut entour deux cens livres de tournois; et
so-much which is-worth about two hundred pounds of Tours and
l'un plus, et mains l'autre, selonc ce que il sont. E
the-one more and less the-other according-to that which they are And

si y a aussi ahnas des plus beaux du monde, qui bien
so there is also asses of-the most beautiful of-the world which well
valent trente mars d'argent l'un; car il sont grant et bien
are-worth thirty marks of-silver the-one for they are great and well
courant et portant moult bien l'embleure. Les genz meinent
running and bearing very well the-amble The people lead
les chevaux jusques à Chisi et à Curmosa, qui sont deux
the horses as-far-as to Kish and to Hormuz which are two
cités sur la rive de la mer d'Inde; et illec treuvent les
cities upon the shore of the sea of-India and there they-find the
marchans qui les achatent et meinent en Ynde pour vendre.
merchants who them buy and lead into India for to-sell

En cest royaume a de maintes cruel gent et
In this kingdom there-are of many cruel people and
homecide, car il s'occient touz jours ensemble. Et, se ne
murderous for they themselves-kill all days together And if not
fust la seigneurie, c'est du Tatar du levant, il feroient
were the lordship this-is of-the Tartar of-the east they would-do
grant mal aux marchans; et pour toute la seigneurie ne
great harm to-the merchants and for all the lordship not
lessent il encore que, mainte foiz, ne leur facent domage
leave they yet that many time — to-them they-do damage
à leur povoir; car se il ne trouvoient les marchans bien
to their power for if they not found the merchants well
appareillez d'armes, il les occiroient et roberoient touz.
equipped with-arms they them would-kill and would-rob all
Et aucune foiz, quant les marchans ne s'en prennent
And some time when the merchants not themselves-thereof take
bien garde, il les destruient touz. Et sont tuit Sarrazin,
well care they them destroy all And they-are all Saracen
car il tiennent la loy de Mahommet.
for they hold the law of Mohammed

En ces cités a marchans et gent d'art qui vivent
In these cities there-are merchants and people of-craft who live
touz de leur mestiers et de leur labours, car il font draps
all from their crafts and from their labors for they make cloths
à or, et draps de soie de toutes façons. Il ont coton assez
of gold and cloths of silk of all fashions They have cotton plenty
qui naist en leur contrée. Il ont habondance de forment et
which grows in their country They have abundance of wheat and
d'orge et de mil et de panis et touz vins et de touz fruiz.
of-barley and of millet and of panic and all wines and of all fruits
Or laissons de cest royaume et vous conterons de la
Now we-leave of this kingdom and you will-tell of the
grant cité de Zasdi.
great city of Yazd

Yazd weaves Yazdi silk, and seven days of plain with game and wild asses lead to Kerman, whose lord the Tartars appoint, with turquoises, steel, armor, embroidery, and swift falcons. Past a cold pass lies the hot plain of Kamadi and Reobarles, with humped white oxen and fat-tailed sheep. Its towns have mud walls against the Karaunas, sons of Tartars by Indian mothers, who darken the day by enchantment to kill and enslave; their king Nogodar betrayed his uncle Chagatai and seized a realm in India. Mark was caught by them and escaped with only seven of his company.

Ci dist de la grant cité de Zasdi. 33

Here tells of the great city of Yazd

Zasdi est une ville moult bonne et perverse mesmes, moult

Yazd is a town very good and of-Persia same very

noble et de grant marchandise. On y laboure mains draps

noble and of great merchandise One there works many cloths

de soie qui s'appellent Zasdi, que les marchans portent par

of silk which themselves-call Yazdi which the merchants carry through

maintes parties pour faire leur afaire et leur proufit. Il

many parts for to-do their business and their profit They

aourent Mahommet. Et quant l'en se part de ceste cité

worship Mohammed And when one himself departs from this city

pour aler avant, si chevauche on sept journées toutes plaines;

for to-go forward so rides one seven day-journeys all plains

et n'y a que en trois lieux habitation pour herbergier. Il

and not-there is but in three places habitation for to-lodge It

y a maint beaux bois qui bien se pueent chevauchier, en

there is many fine woods which well themselves can ride in

quoy a moult beau chacier, et moult bel oiseler de perdris

which there-is very fine hunting and very fine fowling of partridges

et de concornis et de pluseurs autres manieres d'oiseaux assez;

and of quails and of several other manners of-birds plenty

si que les marchans qui par là cheminent en prennent
so that the merchants who through there travel thereof take
à moult grant deliz. Et si a aussi asnes sauvages moult
with very great delight And so there-are also asses wild very
beaux. Et au chief de ces sept journées de plain si treuve l'en
fine And at-the end of these seven day-journeys of plain so finds one
un royaume qui est moult beaux, qui est appellez Creman.
a kingdom which is very fine which is called Kerman

34 Ci dist du royaume de Creman.
Here tells of-the kingdom of Kerman

Creman est un royaume en Perse meismes; et anciennement
Kerman is a kingdom in Persia itself and anciently
ot seigneurie par heritage; mais, puis que les Tatars les
it-had lordship by inheritance but since that the Tartars them
conquirent ne va pas par heritage la seigneurie; mais y
conquered not goes at-all by inheritance the lordship but there
envoie le Tatar celui sire que il veult qu'il ait la seigneurie.
sends the Tartar that lord whom he wishes that-he have the lordship

En cest royaume naissent les pierres, qui s'appellent
In this kingdom grow the stones which themselves-call
turquesses, en grant habondance; car il les treuvent es
turquoises in great abundance for they them find in-the
montaignes et les decavent dedens les roches. Encore ont
mountains and them dig-out within the rocks Further they-have
vaines d'acier et d'andaine assez; et si labourent de tuit
veins of-steel and of-ondanique plenty and so they-work of all
hernois de chevalier moult bien et moult bel; ce sont frains,
harness of knight very well and very fair these are bridles
selles et esperons, et espées, et arcs et carquoiz et toutes
saddles and spurs and swords and bows and quivers and all
autres armes moult bien selonc leur usage. Les dames
other arms very well according-to their usage The ladies

et les damoiseles labourent trop soubtivement et moult
and the damsels work very subtly and very
noblement d'aiguille sur draps de soie de toutes couleurs à
nobly with-needle upon cloths of silk of all colors with
bestes, et à oiseaux, et à arbres, et à flours et à
beasts and with birds and with trees and with flowers and with
ymages de maintes manieres. Et si labourent les courtines des
images of many manners And so they-work the curtains of-the
barons si soubtivement que c'est grant merveille à voir; et
barons so subtly that it-is great marvel to see and
aussi coisins et oriliers et coutes et tretoutes autres choses.
also cushions and pillows and quilts and all other things

Es montaignes de cest pais naissent les meilleurs
In-the mountains of this country are-born the best
faucons du monde, meneur que faucon pelerin; et sont
falcons of-the world smaller than falcon peregrine and they-are
rouges ou piz et dessous la coue, entre les cuisses. Et
red on-the breast and beneath the tail between the thighs And
sont si desmesurement volans que nuls oiseaux ne leur
they-are so beyond-measure flying that any birds not from-them
puet eschapper.
can escape

Et quant l'en se part de ceste cité [de Creman] si
And when one himself departs from this city of Kerman so
chevauche l'en sept journées toutes foiz trouvans villes et
rides one seven day-journeys all times finding towns and
chasteaux et belles habitations assez; pourquoy y a beau
castles and fine dwellings plenty wherefore there is fine
chevauchier, car il treuvent assez de belles chaceries, et
riding for they find plenty of fine huntings and
assez oiselez, de quoy il ont grant deduit. Et quant l'en
plenty fowlings of which they have great delight And when one

a chevauchié ces sept journées par ce plain, si treuve l'en
has ridden these seven day-journeys through this plain so finds one
adonc une montaigne moult grant; et quant l'en a monté
then a mountain very great and when one has climbed
ceste montaigne, si treuve on la descendue moult grant, qui
this mountain so finds one the descent very great which
bien dure à chevauchier deux grans journées. Et toutefoiz
well lasts to ride two great day-journeys And always
treuve l'en de maintes manieres de fruis à grant planté. Et
finds one of many manners of fruits in great plenty And
anciennement y avoit assez habitations; mais ore n'en y
anciently there were plenty dwellings but now not-thereof there
a nul. Mais on treuve gent qui gardent leurs bestes paissant.
is any But one finds people who guard their beasts grazing
Et de la cité de Cremen jusques à ceste descendue a si
And from the city of Kerman as-far-as to this descent there-is so
grant froit d'iver, que à peines en puet nul eschapper.
great cold of-winter that with pains thereof can anyone escape

35 Ci dist d'une cité qui a nom Camadi et de la ruine
Here tells of-a city which has name Kamadi and of the ruin
d'icelle.
of-it

Et quant l'en a chevauchié ces deux journées à declin,
And when one has ridden these two day-journeys at decline
si treuve l'en un grandisme plain. Et au commencement de
so finds one a very-great plain And at-the beginning of
ce plain a une cité qui est Camadi, qui jadis fu moult
this plain there-is a city which is Kamadi which formerly was very
grant cité et noble; mais orendroit ne vaut pas tant; car
great city and noble but now not is-worth at-all so-much for
Tatars d'autre pays l'ont damagié pluseurs fois. Et sachiez que
Tartars of-other country it-have damaged several times And know that

cest plain que je vous di est en moult chault lieu. Et ceste
this plain which I to-you tell is in very hot place And this
province que nous commençons ore, si est appellée Beobarles.
province which we begin now so is called Reobarles

Leur fruiz sont dates et pommes de paradis et autres fruiz
Their fruits are dates and apples of paradise and other fruits
assez, lesquels ne sont en autre lieu froiz. Et en ce plain
plenty which not are in other place cold And in this plain
a une generation d'oiseaux qui s'appellent francolin, qui
there-is a generation of-birds which themselves-call francolin which
sont comperes aux autres francolins du monde; car il sont
are like to-the other francolins of-the world for they are
noir et blanc mellé; et les piez et le bec ont vermeil.
black and white mingled and the feet and the beak they-have vermilion

Les bestes sont ainsi devisées, et vous dirai du buef
The beasts are thus described and to-you I-will-tell of-the ox
premierement. Il sont moult grans et touz blans comme noif;
first They are very great and all white as snow
le pié ont petit et plain; et ce avient pour le lieu qui est
the foot they-have small and flat and this happens for the place which is
chaut. Il ont les cornes courtes et grosses, non aguës. Entre
hot They have the horns short and thick not sharp Between
les espaules ont une boce ronde et haute bien deux paumes.
the shoulders they-have a hump round and high fully two palms
Il sont la plus belle chose à veoir du monde. Et quant il
They are the most beautiful thing to see of-the world And when they
les chargent, si se couchent comme le chamel; et puis
them load so themselves they-lie as the camel and then
se lievent avec leur charge qui est moult grant; car il sont
themselves they-raise with their load which is very great for they are
moult fort bestes. Encore ont moutons grans comme asnes;
very strong beasts Further they-have sheep great as asses

et ont la queue si grant et si grosse, que poise bien trente
and have the tail so great and so thick that it-weighs fully thirty
livres. Il sont moult beaux et gras, et moult bons à mengier.
pounds They are very fine and fat and very good to eat
En cest plain a pluseurs chasteaux et villes qui ont
In this plain there-are several castles and towns which have
leur murs de terre haulx et gros à deffendre soy des
their walls of earth high and thick for to-defend themselves from-the
Carans de quoy il y a assez; et les appellent Caraonas.
Karaunas of which it there is plenty and them they-call Karaunas
Et pourquoy il ont ce nom, pour ce que leurs meres sont
And why they have this name for this that their mothers are
Indienes, et leur peres Tatars. Et sachiez que quant les
Indian and their fathers Tartars And know that when the
Caraonas veulent courre par le pais, et rober le, si font,
Karaunas wish to-run through the country and rob it so they-make
par leur enchantemenz de dyables, tout le jour devenir
by their enchantments of devils all the day become
obscur; si que à paines voit on son compaignon pres de
dark so that with pains sees one his companion near to
lui; et ceste obscurité font bien durer sept journées de
him and this darkness they-make well last seven day-journeys of
lonc. Si sevent moult bien le pais, et chevauchent l'un
long So they-know very well the country and ride the-one
pres de l'autre, et sont aucune foiz bien dix mile; tel
near to the-other and are some times fully ten thousand such
foiz plus et tel foiz mains; si que il prennent tout le
time more and such time less so that they take all the
chemin; et touz ceuls que il treuvent hors de villes ou de
road and all those whom they find outside of towns or of
chasteaux sont pris, que il ne puet eschapper ne homme,
castles are taken so-that there not can escape nor man

ne fame, ne bestes. Et quant il les ont pris, touz les
nor woman nor beasts And when they them have taken all the
hommes viellars occient et les jeunes, et les fames vendent
men old they-kill and the young and the women they-sell
par autre pais pour esclas; si que il damagent moult
through other countries for slaves so that they damage much
la contrée et l'ont toute presque deserte. Leur roy est
the country and it-have all almost deserted Their king is
appellez Nogodar, de ces males genz. Et cestui Nogodar ala
called Nogodar of these evil people And this Nogodar went
à la court de Ciagatay, qui estoit frere charnel au grant
to the court of Chagatai who was brother carnal to-the great
Kaan, bien avec dix mile hommes à cheval, de sa gent;
Khan fully with ten thousand men on horse of his people
et demouroit o lui, pour ce que son oncle estoit. Et en
and dwelt with him for this that his uncle he-was And in
demourant o lui, si pensa, ce Nogodar, une moult grant
dwelling with him so thought this Nogodar a very great
felonnie. Vous dirai comment. Il se parti de son oncle
treachery You I-will-tell how He himself departed from his uncle
qui en la grant Hermenie estoit, et s'enfouy avec une grant
who in the great Armenia was and himself-fled with a great
quantité de gent à cheval, qui moult estoient cruel, et
quantity of people on horse who very were cruel and
s'en passa par Badacian, et par une autre province
himself-thence passed through Badakhshan and through an other province
qui s'appelle Pasiadir; et par une autre qui a nom Ariora
which itself-calls Pashai-Dir and through an other which has name Ariora
Chesiemur. Et illec perdi maintes de ses gens et de ses
Kashmir And there he-lost many of his people and of his
bestes, pour ce que les voies sont estroites et mauvaises. Et
beasts for this that the ways are narrow and bad And

quant il ot toutes ces provinces prises, il entra en Inde, en
when he had all these provinces taken he entered into India in
la fin d'une province qui est appellée d'Alivar. Et demoura
the end of-a province which is called of-Dilivar And he-dwelt
en celle cité, et par celui regne que il tolli au roy
in that city and through that realm which he took-away from-the king
qui estoit de celle province, qui avoit à nom Asidin Soldan,
who was of that province who had as name Asedin Sultan
qui moult estoit grans homs et riches. Et illec demoura
who very was great man and rich And there dwelt
Nogodar avec son ost, qui n'ot paour de nulli et fait
Nogodar with his host who not-had fear of anyone and makes
guerre à touz les Tatars qui entour sa terre demeurent.
war on all the Tartars who around his land dwell

Or vous ai conté de ces males gens et de leur afaires; et
Now to-you I-have told of these evil people and of their affairs and
si vous di pour vray que Messires Marc Pol meismes fu pris
so you I-tell for true that My-lord Mark Pol himself was taken
de celle gent, en celle obscureté; mais, si comme Diex voult,
by that people in that darkness but so as God willed
se fuy et se bouta en un chastel qui pres d'illec estoit,
himself he-fled and himself thrust into a castle which near from-there was
qui a à nom Cono Salmy, et perdi toute sa compagnie,
which has as name Cono Salmi and he-lost all his company
que n'eschapa avec lui que sept personnes de toute sa mesnie.
so-that not-escaped with him but seven persons of all his household

Or vous ay conté si comme il avint; si irons avant
Now to-you I-have told so as it happened so we-will-go forward
et vous conterons des autres choses.
and you will-tell of-the other things

Five days south and down a robbers' descent lies the plain of Hormuz and its port on the ocean, where ships from India unload spices, stones, pearls, silks, and ivory. Its king, Ruknuddin Ahmad, is the man of the king of Kerman. The heat is so great that a hot wind would kill everyone if they did not stand in water up to the head. Their date wine purges and fattens, their sewn ships perish easily, and they mourn the dead for four years. The book returns north by another road to Kerman, with its hot baths and bitter bread.

Ci dist encore de la declivée de la cité de Hormos. 36

Here tells further of the descent of the city of Hormuz

Il est voirs que le plain dure vers midi bien cinq

It is true that the plain lasts toward south fully five

journées; et puis si treuve l'en une autre clinée qui dure

day-journeys and then so finds one an other descent which lasts

bien vingt milles, qui est moult mauvaise voie, et douteuse,

fully twenty miles which is very bad way and perilous

car il y a moult de mauvaises gens et robeurs. Et quant

for it there is much of wicked people and robbers And when

on a descendue ceste vallée si se treuve on en un autre

one has descended this valley so himself finds one in an other

plain moult beau, qui s'appelle le plain de Formose. Il dure

plain very fine which itself-calls the plain of Hormuz It lasts

deux journées de lonc, et y a belles rivieres. Si y a

two day-journeys of long and there are fine rivers So there are

dattes assez et assez d'autres fruiz. Encore y a de moult

dates plenty and plenty of-other fruits Further there is of many

de manieres d'oiseaux moult beaux, que nous n'avons pas.

of manners of-birds very fine which we not-have at-all

Et quant on a chevauchié ces deux journées si trouve l'en

And when one has ridden these two day-journeys so finds one

la mer ocianne. Et sus la rive a une cité qui est apelée
the sea ocean And upon the shore there-is a city which is called
Cormos, laquelle a port. Et vous di que les marchans
Hormuz which has port And you I-tell that the merchants
y viennent d'Inde avec leur nefs chargées d'espisseries, et
there come from-India with their ships laden with-spices and
de pierrerie, et de pelles et de draps de soie et d'or;
with precious-stones and with pearls and with cloths of silk and of-gold
et de dens d'olifans, et d'autres pluseurs marcheandises.
and with teeth of-elephants and with-other several merchandises
Si les vendent aux marcheans qui, puis, les portent par
So them they-sell to-the merchants who then them carry through
universel monde, vendant aux autres marchans. Elle est ville
universal world selling to-the other merchants It is town
de moult grant marchandises. Elle a soubs soy cités et
of very great merchandises It has under itself cities and
chasteaux assez; mais elle est chief du regne. Le roy a
castles plenty but it is head of-the realm The king has
nom Ruomedam Ahomet. Il y a moult grandisme chaleur
name Ruknuddin Ahmad It there is very very-great heat
pour le soleil, et est en ferme terre. Et se aucun marchant
for the sun and it-is in firm land And if some merchant
de estrange pais y muert, le roy prent tout le sien.
of foreign country there dies the king takes all the his

En ceste terre se fait le vin de dattes avec espices, qui est
In this land itself makes the wine of dates with spices which is
moult bon; et quant aucuns le boit, si n'en est acoustumez,
very good and when someone it drinks if not-thereof he-is accustomed
il les fait moult aler à chambres et espurgier, si que depuis
it them makes much go to chambers and purge so that afterward
il lui fait grant bien, et engresse. Et quant il sont malades,
it to-him does great good and fattens And when they are sick

si menguent char et pain de forment. Et qui mengeroit pain
so they-eat meat and bread of wheat And who would-eat bread
et char quant il seroit sains, il chairroit malades. Mais il
and meat when he would-be healthy he would-fall sick But they
menguent, quant il sont sains, dates et poisson salé, cestours
eat when they are healthy dates and fish salted tunny
et ciboules; et ainsi usent ceste ciboule viande pour estre sains.
and onions and thus they-use this onion food for to-be healthy

Leurs nefs sont moult mauvaises et en perissent assez,
Their ships are very bad and thereof perish plenty
pour ce que elles ne sont clouées de fer, mais il sont
for this that they not are nailed with iron but they are
cousues de fil que il font d'escorces d'arbres des nois
sewn with thread which they make from-barks of-trees of-the nuts
d'Inde; car il font batre l'escorce, et devient comme poil de
of-India for they make beat the-bark and it-becomes like hair of
cring de cheval, de quoi il font fil et en cousent leur
mane of horse of which they make thread and therewith sew their
nefs. Il dure assez, et ne se gaste pas à l'aigue de la mer;
ships It lasts much and not itself spoils at-all at the-water of the sea
mais à une fortune, il ne dure pas. Il portent un arbre, et
but at a storm it not lasts at-all They carry a mast and
une voile et un timon, et ne vont couvertes, fors quant il
a sail and a rudder and not go covered except when they
sont chargiées. Si cueuvrent la marchandise de cuirs, et sur
are laden So they-cover the merchandise with hides and upon
les cuirs mettent les chevaux que il portent vendre en Ynde.
the hides put the horses which they carry to-sell into India
Il n'ont neent de fer pour faire clous; et pour ce font il
They not-have anything of iron for make nails and for this make they
chevilles de fust de quoy il cloent leur nefs; et puis les
pegs of wood with which they nail their ships and then them

cousent avec du fil que je vous ai dit dessus. Si que c'est
sew with of-the thread which I to-you have said above So that it-is
grant peril à aler en ces nefs; car il en perit assez; car
great peril to go in these ships for there thereof perish plenty for
en ceste mer d'Inde fait moult grant tempeste pluseurs fois.
in this sea of-India makes very great tempest several times

Les gens sont noirs et aourent Mahommet. Et si ne
The people are black and worship Mohammed And so not
demeurent pas les gens es cités, pour la grant chaleur
dwell at-all the people in-the cities for the great heat
qui y est; car tuit morroient; ains vont dehors en leur
which there is for all would-die but they-go outside into their
jardins là où il a rivieres et aigues assez. Et pour
gardens there where it there-are rivers and waters plenty And for
tout ce n'eschapperoit il, se ne fust ce que je vous dirai.
all this not-would-escape they if not were this which I to-you will-tell

Il est voirs que pluseurs fois en l'esté leur vient un
It is true that several times in the-summer to-them comes a
vent par devers le Sablon qui est environ ce plain, qui
wind by toward the Sand which is around this plain which
est si chaut desmesureement que il les occirroit touz, se
is so hot beyond-measure that it them would-kill all if
ne feust ce que maintenant qu'il sentent que cel vent
not were this that at-once that-they feel that that wind
chaut vient, il entrent dedens l'aigues jusques à la teste
hot comes they enter within the-waters as-far-as to the head
et demeurent dedens jusques à tant qu'il soit passé.
and remain within until to such-time that-it be passed

Il sement leur forment et leur orge, et les autres blés
They sow their wheat and their barley and the other grains
ou mois de novembre et les recueillent ou mois de
in-the month of November and them gather in-the month of

mars. Il n'ont nulle herbe vert, fors les dates qui leur
March They not-have any grass green except the dates which to-them
durent jusques en may. Et tout ce avient pour la grant
last until into May And all this happens for the great
chaleur qui y est, qui tout seiche.
heat which there is which all dries

Leur nefs n'en sont pas aussi empirées, car il les
Their ships not-thereof are at-all so worsened for they them
oignent d'uile de poisson. Et quant aucuns muert, il en
anoint with-oil of fish And when someone dies they thereof
font moult grant dueil, car il le pleurent bien quatre ans.
make very great mourning for they him weep fully four years
Et au mains chascun jour une foiz font le dueil et
And at-the least each day one time they-make the mourning and
s'assemblent et parens et amis et voisins touz ensemble à
themselves-assemble both kin and friends and neighbors all together to
faire ce dueil, de quoy il font grans cris et grans plours.
make this mourning of which they make great cries and great weepings

Or lessons de ceste terre; et ne vous conterons pas ore du
Now we-leave of this land and not you will-tell at-all now of-the
fait d'Inde; mais quant lieux et temps en sera, nous le vous
matter of-India but when place and time thereof will-be we it to-you
conterons, et tournerons par tremontaine pour conter de celle
will-tell and will-turn by north for to-tell of that
province. Et retournerons par une autre voie à la devant dite
province And we-will-return by an other way to the before said
cité de Creman; pour ce que, en celle contrée, dont je vous
city of Kerman for this that into that country of-which I to-you
vueil conter, l'en ne puet aler se non par ladite cité de Creman.
wish to-tell one not can go except not by the-said city of Kerman

Et sachiez que le roy Ruomedam Achomat de Cormos,
And know that the king Ruknuddin Ahmad of Hormuz
dont nous partîmes, est l'homme de cest roy de Creman.
from-which we departed is the-man of this king of Kerman
Et au retour de Cormos à Creman a moult bains
And at-the return from Hormuz to Kerman there-are many baths
naturelement chaus; et est pleniere; et si treuve on cités
naturally hot and it-is plain and so finds one cities
assez et fruiz assez. A grant marchié y treuve on toutes
plenty and fruits plenty At great bargain there finds one all
viandes, et dates à grant habondance. Le pain de forment
foods and dates in great abundance The bread of wheat
est si amer que nuls n'en puet mengier se il n'en est
is so bitter that any not-thereof can eat if he not-thereof is
acoustumez. Et ce avient pour ce que les aigues sont moult
accustomed And this happens for this that the waters are very
ameres. Les bains que je vous ai dit sont moult vertueux;
bitter The baths which I to-you have said are very virtuous
car il garissent de roigne et de pluseurs autres maladies.
for they cure of mange and of several other maladies

Or vous commencerai à conter les contrées que je vous
Now to-you I-will-begin to tell the countries which I to-you
nommerai en ce notre livre, devers tremontaine; et ore
will-name in this our book toward north and now
commence.
it-begins

Beyond Kerman come seven wearisome days: three with only bitter green water that purges man and beast, then four of desert where wild asses live. Kuhbanan works steel mirrors, tutty, and spodium, which it draws from burning a vein of earth under an iron grating. After eight more days of bitter desert comes Tunocain at the end of Persia, with the Dry Tree, whose bark is green on one side and white on the other, where Alexander fought Darius; its towns are rich and its women beyond measure beautiful.

Comment l'en treuve aniouse voie et moult deserte. 37

How one finds wearisome way and very deserted

Quant on se part de celle cité de Creman on treuve bien

When one himself departs from that city of Kerman one finds fully

sept journées de moult aniouse voie, et vous dirai comment.

seven day-journeys of very wearisome way and to-you I-will-tell how

Il y a trois journées que l'en n'y treuve aigues, se puy

It there is three day-journeys that one not-there finds waters except little

non. Et celle que on y treuve est amere et vert, et si salée

not And that which one there finds is bitter and green and so salted

que nul ne la pourroit boire; et qui en beuvroit une goute,

that anyone not it could drink and who thereof would-drink a drop

si le feroit aler, de route, bien dix fois à chambre. Si

so him it-would-make go of row fully ten times to chamber So

y a cel que on treuve en ces rivieres, que nul n'en ose

there is salt which one finds in these rivers that anyone not-thereof dares

mengier ne boire; que qui en mengeroit, si le feroit aler

eat nor drink for who thereof would-eat so him it-would-make go

à chambre trop. Si que il convient porter yaue, tant comme

to chamber too-much So that it behooves carry water as-long as

durent ces trois journées, pour les gens; mais aux bestes

last these three day-journeys for the people but to-the beasts

convient il boivre de ceste mauvaise yaue; car il n'ont autre;
behooves it drink of this bad water for they not-have other
et elles en boivent pour la grant soif qu'elles ont. Si que
and they thereof drink for the great thirst that-they have So that
celle yaue les fait si espurgier que aucune foiz en muerent.
that water them makes so purge that some times thereof they-die
Et en toutes ces trois journées n'a nulle habitation,
And in all these three day-journeys not-there-is any habitation
mais est tout desert et grant secherece. Bestes sauvages
but it-is all desert and great dryness Beasts wild
n'y a nulles, car elles n'y trouveroient que mengier.
not-there are any for they not-there would-find what to-eat

Apres ces trois journées de desert si treuve l'en un autre
After these three day-journeys of desert so finds one an other
desert qui dure quatre journées; et ainsi est de la maniere de
desert which lasts four day-journeys and thus it-is of the manner of
l'autre, sans ce que on y treuve oes sauvaiges. Et au chief
the-other except this that one there finds asses wild And at-the end
de ces autres quatre journées de desert fenist le regne de
of these other four day-journeys of desert ends the realm of
Creman; et treuve l'en une autre cité qui a nom Cabanant.
Kerman and finds one an other city which has name Kubbanan

38 Ci devise de la cité de Cabanant et des ouvrages que
Here describes of the city of Kubbanan and of-the works which
l'en y fait.
one there makes

Cabanant est une cité grant. Les genz aourent Mahommet. Il
Kubbanan is a city great The people worship Mohammed It
y a fer et acier et andaine assez. On y fait mirouers d'acier
there is iron and steel and ondanique plenty One there makes mirrors of-steel
moult beaux et grans. On fait illec la totie qui est moult
very fine and great One makes there the tutty which is very

bonne aux yeux. Et encore y fait l'en l'espodie et vous
good for-the eyes And further there makes one the-spodium and to-you
dirai comment il font ce. Il ont une vaine de terre qui est
I-will-tell how they make this They have a vein of earth which is
bonne à ce faire, et la mettent en une grant fournaise ardant;
good for this to-make and it put into a great furnace burning
et dessus la fournaise a graticule de fer; et la fumée, et
and above the furnace there-is grating of iron and the smoke and
l'umeur qui ist de celle terre se prent à la graile de fer,
the-humor which issues from that earth itself takes to the grate of iron
et ce est la totie, et ce qui demeure du feu est l'espodie.
and this is the tutty and that which remains of-the fire is the-spodium

Or laisserons de ceste cité et irons avant.
Now we-will-leave of this city and will-go forward

Comment l'en treuve un desert qui dure huit journées. 39
How one finds a desert which lasts eight day-journeys

Quant l'en se part de ceste cité de Cabanant si treuve
When one himself departs from this city of Kubbanan so finds
l'en un desert qui bien dure huit journées ouquel a
one a desert which fully lasts eight day-journeys in-which there-is
moult secherece; ouquel n'a fruiz ne arbres; et les
much dryness in-which not-there-are fruits nor trees and the
aigues sont ameres et mauvaises. Et si convient porter viande
waters are bitter and bad And so it-behooves carry food
et aigues. Mais les bestes convient boire de celle mauvaise
and waters But the beasts it-behooves drink of that bad
eaue qu'elles boivent moult envis; mais boire leur convient
water which-they drink very unwillingly but drink to-them it-behooves
pour la grant soif qu'elles ont. Et au chief de ces huit
for the great thirst that-they have And at-the end of these eight
journées si treuve l'en une province qui a nom Tonocain.
day-journeys so finds one a province which has name Tunocain

Il y a citez et chasteaux assez et est en la fin de Perse
It there is cities and castles plenty and it-is in the end of Persia
vers tremontaine; et y a un grandisme plain où est
toward north and there is a very-great plain where is
l'Arbre Solque que nous appelons l'Arbre Sec, et vous dirai
the-Tree Solitary which we call the-Tree Dry and to-you I-will-tell
comment il est fait. Il est grans et gros, et l'escorche est
how it is made It is great and thick and the-bark is
d'une part vert, et d'autre blanche et fait ricy si comme les
on-one part green and on-other white and makes husks so as the
chastiaus; mais il est vuit dedens. Il est jaunes comme bois
chestnuts but it is empty within It is yellow like boxwood
et moult fort; et n'a nul arbre pres, à plus de cent
and very strong and not-there-is any tree near at more than hundred
mille; mais que d'une part il a arbres bien à dix milles.
miles but that on-one part it there-is trees fully at ten miles
Et illec se dient, ceux de celle contrée, fu la bataille
And there themselves say those of that country was the battle
d'Alixandre contre le roy Daire. Les villes et les chasteaux
of-Alexander against the king Darius The towns and the castles
ont grant habondance de toutes choses bonnes et belles, car
have great abundance of all things good and fair for
le pais est trop bien compassez; ne n'y a trop chaut ne
the country is very well proportioned nor not-there is too hot nor
trop froit. Les genz aourent tuit Mahomet. Il y a moult
too cold The people worship all Mohammed It there is very
belles genz, et proprement les fames sont outre mesure belles.
fair people and especially the women are beyond measure beautiful

Et de ci nous partirons et vous dirons d'une contrée
And from here we will-depart and to-you will-tell of-a country
qui est appellée Mulette là où le Viel de la Montaigne
which is called Mulehet there where the Old-Man of the Mountain
souloit demourer avec ses Hasisins, si comme vous orrez.
was-wont to-dwell with his Assassins so as you will-hear

XVI · THE OLD MAN OF THE MOUNTAIN

In Mulehet the Old Man of the Mountain, Alaodin, walled a valley into a garden like Mohammed's paradise, with palaces, streams of wine, milk, and honey, and lovely damsels. Youths of twelve who wished to be fighters were drugged and carried in, and believed themselves in paradise. When the Old Man wanted a lord killed, he drugged one again and woke him outside; longing to return, the young man would kill whomever he was sent to kill and die without fear, so the lords paid the Old Man tribute.

Ci devise du Viel de la Montaigne. 40
Here describes of-the Old-Man of the Mountain
Mulette est une contrée là où le Viel de la Montaigne
Mulehet is a country there where the Old-Man of the Mountain
souloit demourer anciennement; et veult dire mulette en
was-wont to-dwell anciently and wishes to-say mulehet in
françois: diex terrien. Or vous conterai tout son afaire
French god earthly Now to-you I-will-tell all his affair
selonc ce que le dit Messire Marc Pol qui l'oy conter
according-to that which it says My-lord Mark Pol who it-heard tell
à pluseurs hommes de celle contrée. Le Viel estoit apellez
from several men of that country The Old-Man was called
en leur language Aloadin. Il avoit fait fermer entre deux
in their language Alaodin He had made enclose between two

montaignes, en une vallée, le plus grant jardin et le plus
mountains in a valley the most great garden and the most
beau qui oncques fust veuz, plains de tous fruiz du monde;
fair that ever was seen full of all fruits of-the world
et y avoit les plus belles maisons et les plus beaus palais
and there were the most fair houses and the most fair palaces
qui oncques feussent veuz, touz dorez et pourtraiz de toutes
which ever were seen all gilded and painted with all
choses moult bien. Et si y avoit conduis qui couroient
things very well And so there were conduits which ran
moult bien de vin et de lait, et de miel, et d'aigue; et
very well with wine and with milk and with honey and with-water and
plain de dames et de damoiselles les plus belles du monde,
full of ladies and of damsels the most beautiful of-the world
qui savoient sonner de touz instrumens et chanter moult bien;
who knew play on all instruments and sing very well
et danssoient si que ce estoient uns deliz de ce veoir. Et
and danced so that this were some delights of this to-see And
leur faisoit entendant, le Viel, que ce jardin estoit paradis.
them made believing the Old-Man that this garden was paradise
Et pour ce l'avoit il fait de telle maniere que Mahomez
And for this it-had he made in such manner that Mohammed
dist que leur paradis seroit beaus jardins plains de conduis
said that their paradise would-be fair gardens full of conduits
de vin, et de lait, et de miel et d'aigue, et plains de
of wine and of milk and of honey and of-water and full of
belles femmes au delit de chascun en celle maniere comme
fair women at-the delight of each in that manner as
celui du Viel. Et pour ce croient il que ce fust paradis.
that of-the Old-Man And for this believe they that this were paradise

En cel jardin n'entroit nulz homs, se non ceus que il
Into that garden not-entered any man except not those whom he
vouloit faire ses Hasisins. Il avoit un chastel à l'entrée de
wished to-make his Assassins He had a castle at the-entrance of
cel jardin, si fort que tout le monde ne le pourroit prendre,
that garden so strong that all the world not it could take
et ne povoit on entrer en cel jardin que par illec. Il tenoit
and not could one enter into that garden but by there He kept
en sa court joenes enfans de douze ans, de sa contrée,
in his court young children of twelve years of his country
qui avoient volenté d'estre hommes d'armes; et leur disoit
who had will of-being men of-arms and to-them said
comment Mahommet disoit que leur paradis estoit de la
how Mohammed said that their paradise was of the
maniere que je vous ai dit; et ceus le creoient comme
manner which I to-you have said and they it believed as
Sarrasins le croient. Et les faisoit metre dedens cel jardin par
Saracens it believe And them he-had put within that garden by
dix et par six et par quatre ensamble, en ceste maniere: car
ten and by six and by four together in this manner for
il leur faisoit boivre un buvrage de quoi il s'endormoient
he them had drink a drink from which they themselves-fell-asleep
maintenant; puis les faisoit prendre et mettre en son
at-once then them he-had taken and put into his
jardin. Et quant ils s'esveilloient si se treuvoient là.
garden And when they themselves-awoke so themselves they-found there

Comment le Viel fait parfaiz ses Hasisins. 41

How the Old-Man makes perfect his Assassins

Quant il se treuvent leans et il se voient en si
When they themselves find in-there and they themselves see in so
beau lieu, cuident estre en paradis vraiement. Les dames et
fair place they-think to-be in paradise truly The ladies and

les damoiselles les soulagent touzjours a leur volenté [si que
the damsels them solace always at their will so that
les jeunes ont ce que il veulent avoir, et jamais à leur
the young-ones have that which they wish to-have and ever-more at their
voulenté] n'istroient de laiens. Le seigneur Viel que
will not-they-would-issue from in-there The lord Old-Man whom
je vous ai dit, si tient sa court noble et grant, et fait
I to-you have said so holds his court noble and great and makes
acroire à cele simple gent, qui li est entour, que il est un
believe to that simple people who to-him is around that he is a
grant prophete. Et ainsi le croient certainement. Et quant
great prophet And thus him they-believe certainly And when
il veut avoir de ses Hasisins pour envoier les en aucun
he wishes to-have of his Assassins for to-send them into some
lieu, si leur fait donner de ce buvrage à aucun qui sont
place so to-them he-has given of this drink to some who are
en cel jardin, et si le fait porter en son palais. Et quant
in that garden and so him has carried into his palace And when
il est esveilliez, si se treuve hors de son paradis, en ce
he is awakened so himself he-finds outside of his paradise in this
chastel, de quoi il en a moult grant merveille, et n'en
castle of which he thereof has very great wonder and not-thereof
est pas trop aise. Le Viel le fait venir devant lui, et si
is at-all too glad The Old-Man him has come before him and so
s'umilie moult vers lui, comme celui qu'il croient qu'il
himself-humbles much toward him as one whom-they believe that-he
soit vrais prophetes. Et il leur demande dont il viennent.
be true prophet And he them asks whence they come
Et il dient que il viennent de paradis; et dient que il
And they say that they come from paradise and say that it

est tel comme Mahommet dist en leur loy. Et li autres qui
is such as Mohammed said in their law And the others who
ce oient et ne l'ont veu, si y ont grant volenté d'aler.
this hear and not it-have seen so there have great will of-going
Et quant il veut faire occire un grant seigneur, si leur
And when he wishes to-have killed a great lord so to-them
dist: «Alez et occiez tel personne; et quant vous serez
he-says Go and kill such person and when you will-be
retournez, je vous ferai porter par mes angles en paradis.
returned I you will-have carried by my angels into paradise
Et se vous morez là, je manderai à mes angles que il
And if you die there I will-send to my angels that they
vous portent arrieres en paradis.» Et ainsi leur faisoit acroire;
you carry back into paradise And thus them he-made believe
et pour ce faisoient tuit son commandement qu'il ne
and for this they-did all his command so-that-they not
laissoient pour nul peril, pour le grant talent que il avoient
left-off for any peril for the great desire which they had
de tourner arriere en son paradis. Et par ceste maniere
of turning back into his paradise And by this manner
faisoit, le Viel, occire touz ceus que il leur commandoit.
had the Old-Man killed all those whom he them commanded
Et pour la tres grant doute que les seigneurs avoient de lui,
And for the very great fear which the lords had of him
si li rendoient treu, pour avoir paix à lui et amistié.
so to-him they-rendered tribute for to-have peace with him and friendship

In 1252 Hülegü sent a baron to besiege the Old Man's castle; after three years the food failed, and the Old Man and all his men were killed. The road then runs through good plains to Shibarghan, whose dried melons are sweeter than honey, and to Balkh, where Alexander married Darius's daughter and Persia ends. After twelve days through deserted country comes Taican with its mountains of the best salt in the world, then drinking country where men wind a cord about their heads and dress in skins, and Kishm with its porcupines and cave dwellings.

42 Ci devise comment le Viel fu destruit.
Here describes how the Old-Man was destroyed

Il fu voirs que au temps de l'incarnation,
It was true that at-the time of the-incarnation
mil.cc.xlij. (1242 pour 1252) ans de Crist, Alau, le
a-thousand-two-hundred-forty-two 1242 for 1252 years of Christ Hülegü the
seigneur des Tatars du levant, entendi ceste grant mauvestié
lord of-the Tartars of-the east heard this great wickedness
de lui; si pensa de faire le destruire. Si prist un de ses barons
of him so he-thought of having him destroyed So he-took one of his barons
et l'envoia entour ce chastel atout grant ost, et assegerent le
and him-sent around this castle with great host and they-besieged the
chastel trois ans qu'il ne le porent prendre, tant estoit fort.
castle three years so-that-they not it could take so-much it-was strong
Et se il eussent eu que mengier, il ne l'eussent jamais pris.
And if they had had what eat they not it-would-have ever-more taken
Mais apres les trois ans leur failli la vitaille; si furent pris, et fu
But after the three years them failed the victuals so they-were taken and was
occis ledit Viel avec touz ses hommes. Et depuis n'en y
killed the-said Old-Man with all his men And since not-thereof there
ot nul, car là feni sa mauvaistié que il avoit ja tant faite.
was any for there ended his wickedness which he had already so-much done

Or laisserons de ce; et vous conterons de notre matiere.
Now we-will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of our matter
Ci devise de la cité de Sapurgan. 43
Here describes of the city of Shibarghan
Et quant l'en se part de cest chastel on chevauche
And when one himself departs from this castle one rides
par beaus plains et belles costieres, là où il a moult
through fine plains and fine slopes there where it there-are very
beaus herbages et bonne pasture et fruis assez, et de toutes
fine pastures and good pasture and fruits plenty and of all
choses en grant habondance. Les osts y demeurent moult
things in great abundance The hosts there dwell very
volentiers pour le bon pais qu'il y treuvent. Et dure bien
willingly for the good country which-they there find And lasts fully
ceste contrée six journées. Il y a villes et chasteaux assez.
this country six day-journeys It there is towns and castles plenty
Les gens y aourent Mahomet. Et aucune fois y treuve
The people there worship Mohammed And some time there finds
l'en un desert de soixante milles ou de mains, esquels desers
one a desert of sixty miles or of less in-which deserts
ne treuve l'en point d'eaue; mais la convient porter o lui. Et
not finds one whit of-water but it behooves carry with him And
quant l'en a chevauchié les .vj. cités, si treuve l'en une cité
when one has ridden the six cities so finds one a city
qui a nom Sapurgan. Il y a grant planté de toutes choses.
which has name Shibarghan It there is great plenty of all things
Et si vous di qu'on y treuve les meillours molons du
And so you I-tell that-one there finds the best melons of-the
monde, et en grant quantité. Il les font secher en ceste
world and in great quantity They them make dry in this
maniere qu'il les taillent si comme corroies, et les metent
manner that-they them cut so as straps and them put

au soleil. Et quant il sont sec, il sont plus doux que
in-the sun And when they are dry they are more sweet than
miel, et en font marchandise; car il le vendent par tout
honey and thereof make merchandise for they it sell through all
le pays. Il y a venoison assez, et oiseaux à grant planté.
the country It there is venison plenty and birds in great plenty

Or vous laïsserons de ceste cité; et vous conterons d'une
Now you we-will-leave of this city and to-you will-tell of-an
autre cité qui a nom Balac.
other city which has name Balkh

44 Ci dist de la cité de Balac.
Here tells of the city of Balkh

Balac est une noble cité, et grant, qui jadis fut moult
Balkh is a noble city and great which formerly was much
plus grant. Mais les Tatars et autre gent l'ont moult gastée
more great But the Tartars and other people it-have much wasted
et domagiée. Car il y a maint beau palais, et maintes belles
and damaged For it there is many fine palace and many fine
maisons de marbre. Et si vous di que, en ceste cité, prist
houses of marble And so you I-tell that in this city took
Alixandre à femme la fille de Daire, si comme ceux de la
Alexander to wife the daughter of Darius so as those of the
ville content. Il aourent Mahomet. Et sachiez que jusques à
town tell They worship Mohammed And know that as-far-as to
ceste cité dure la seigneurie du seigneur Tatar de levant. Et
this city lasts the lordship of-the lord Tartar of east And
en ceste cité sont les fins de Perse, entre grec et levant.
in this city are the ends of Persia between northeast and east

Or laisserons de ceste terre, et vous conterons d'un
Now we-will-leave of this land and to-you will-tell of-an
autre pais qui s'appelle Gana.
other country which itself-calls Gana

Quant l'en se part de ceste cité que je vous ai
When one himself departs from this city which I to-you have
dit, si chevauche l'en bien douze journées entre grec
said so rides one fully twelve day-journeys between northeast
et levant qu'on ne treuve nulle habitation, pour ce que
and east so-that-one not finds any habitation for this that
les genz sont toutes fois [es montaignes] en forteresses
the people are all times in-the mountains in fortresses
pour les males genz, et pour les osts qui leur faisoient
for the evil people and for the hosts which them did
domage. Il y a aigles assez et venoisons, et moult de
damage It there is eagles plenty and venisons and many of
lyons. L'en ne treuve nulles viandes; si convient porter tout
lions One not finds any foods so it-behooves carry all
ce de quoi l'en a besoing en ces douze journées.
that of which one has need in these twelve day-journeys

Ci dist des montaignes qui sont de sel. 45
Here tells of-the mountains which are of salt

Quant l'en a alé ces douze journées, si treuve l'en
When one has gone these twelve day-journeys so finds one
un chastel qui a nom Taican où il a moult grant
a castle which has name Taican where it there-is very great
marchié de blé; et est moult belle terre; et ces montaignes
market of grain and it-is very fair land and these mountains
devers midi sont toutes de sel, qui sont moult grans. Et
toward south are all of salt which are very great And
toute la contrée d'environ, de plus de trente journées, en
all the country of-around from more than thirty day-journeys thereof
viennent querre, de ce sel, qui est le meilleur du monde.
come seek of this salt which is the best of-the world
Et est si dur que l'en ne le puet taillier que à grans
And it-is so hard that one not it can cut but with great

piquois de fer. Et en y a si grant habondance que tout
picks of iron And thereof there is so great abundance that all
le monde en auroit assez jusques en la fin du monde.
the world thereof would-have enough until into the end of-the world
Et quant l'en est parti de ceste cité, en chevauchant trois
And when one is departed from this city in riding three
journées, toutes fois entre grec et levant, l'en trouve moult
day-journeys all times between northeast and east one finds very
belles terres plaines de fruit et habitations assez, et grant
fair lands full of fruit and habitations plenty and great
marchié de toutes choses, et vignes assez. Les genz aourent
market of all things and vines plenty The people worship
Mahomet et sont mauvaises genz et mourdrisseurs; et
Mohammed and are wicked people and murderers and
demeurent volentiers en buveries, car il ont bons buvrages
dwell willingly in drinking-houses for they have good drinks
et il sont grans buveours et s'enivrent volentiers; et
and they are great drinkers and themselves-get-drunk willingly and
est leur vin cuit. Et ne portent en leur chief que une corde
is their wine cooked And not they-wear on their head but a cord
longue de dix paumes; et si l'avironnent entour leur testes.
long of ten palms and so it-they-wind around their heads
Il sont moult bons chaceours, et prennent venoisons assez;
They are very good hunters and take venisons plenty
et n'ont nulle vesteure fors que les peaux des bestes que il
and not-have any clothing except that the skins of-the beasts which they
prennent, de quoi il se vestent et chaucent; et chascun
take with which they themselves clothe and shoe and each
sait afaitier le cuir de quoi il se vestent et chaucent.
knows dress the leather with which they themselves clothe and shoe

Et quant l'en a chevauchié ces trois jornées si treuve l'en
And when one has ridden these three day-journeys so finds one
une cité qui a nom Casem. Et sont les chasteaux et villes
a city which has name Kishm And are the castles and towns
es montaignes. Et parmi cette cité passe un flun auques
in-the mountains And through this city passes a river somewhat
grant. Il y a mains pors espiz. Et quant le chaceour le veult
great It there is many pigs spiny And when the hunter it wishes
prendre aus chiens, il s'assemblent pluseurs ensemble et
to-take with-the dogs they themselves-assemble several together and
sont moult grans. Et quant il sont tuit assemblé, si se
are very great And when they are all assembled so themselves
cuevrent et gettent leur espines, que il portent sus le
they-cover and throw their spines which they carry upon the
dos, as chiens et les navrent malement en pluseurs lieux.
back at-the dogs and them wound evilly in several places

Ceste cité de Casem a un moult grant province qui
This city of Kishm has a very great province which
aussi a à nom Casem. Il ont language par euls. Les
also has as name Kishm They have language by themselves The
vilains, qui ont leur bestail, demeurent en montaignes; car
peasants who have their livestock dwell in mountains for
il ont leur habitations là moult belles et moult grans
they have their dwellings there very fair and very great
dessouz terre, en grans caves, et les font moult bien,
beneath ground in great caves and them make very well
pour ce que les montaignes sont de terre.
for this that the mountains are of earth

Et quant l'en se part de ceste cité de Casem, que
And when one himself departs from this city of Kishm which
je vous ai dit dessus, si chevauche l'en trois journées que
I to-you have said above so rides one three day-journeys so-that

l'en ne treuve habitations nulles; ne à mengier ne à boivre;
one not finds habitations any nor to eat nor to drink
mais il convient porter ce que on a besoing. Et au
but it behooves carry that which one has need And at-the
chief de ces trois journées treuve l'en une province qui
end of these three day-journeys finds one a province which
a nom Balacian de quoi nous vous conterons son affaire.
has name Badakhshan of which we to-you will-tell its affair

XVIII · BADAKHSHAN, PASHAI, AND KASHMIR

The kings of Badakhshan, who claim descent from Alexander and Darius's daughter, keep the balas rubies of their mountain for themselves so that they stay dear, and the land yields azure, silver, unshod horses, falcons, and sesame. Behind its strong passes its people fear no one, and they wear breeches of a hundred ells of cotton to seem broad. Ten days south, the brown idolaters of Pashai are skilled in enchantment. Kashmir's idolaters make idols speak and change the weather, and their hermits live chastely to a great age.

46 Ci devise de la province de Balacian.
Here describes of the province of Badakhshan
Balacian est une province où les gens aourent Mahomet.
Badakhshan is a province where the people worship Mohammed
Il ont langage par eus; et est moult grant royaume; et
They have language by themselves and it-is very great kingdom and
si regnerent par heritage. Et touz ceus de cel lignage sont
so they-reigned by inheritance And all those of that lineage are
descendu du roy Alixandre et de la fille du roy Daire,
descended from-the king Alexander and from the daughter of-the king Darius
qui estoit sire du grandisme regne de Perse. Et s'appelent,
who was lord of-the very-great realm of Persia And themselves-call

tuit cil roy, en sarrasinois: «Zulcarniain»; qui vaut à dire en
all those kings in Saracen Zulcarniain which is-worth to say in
françois: Alixandre; car c'est pour l'amour au grant Alixandre.
French Alexander for it-is for the-love of-the great Alexander
Et en ceste province naissent les balais qui sont moult
And in this province are-born the balases which are very
belles pierres precieuses et de grant vaillance. Et les treuve
fair stones precious and of great worth And them finds
l'en es roches des montaignes; car il cavent moult soubs
one in-the rocks of-the mountains for they dig much under
terre et font grans caves, si comme ceus qui cavent les
ground and make great caves so as those who dig the
argentieres. Et c'est une propre montaigne seulement que il
silver-mines And it-is a particular mountain only which they
apelent Sygninan. Li roys les fait caver pour lui; et nul autre
call Syghinan The king them has dug for himself and any other
homme n'oseroit aler caver en cele montaigne que le roy, qui
man not-would-dare go dig in that mountain but the king who
ne fust mort maintenant; car il y a paine la teste et l'avoir;
not were dead at-once for it there is penalty the head and the-goods
et que nulz ne les puet traire de son royaume. Mais il les
and that anyone not them can take-out from his kingdom But he them
amasse toutes et les envoie aux autres roys, si qu'il li
amasses all and them sends to-the other kings so that-it to-him
convient faire treuage, et tel y a qui les envoie par amistié.
behooves make tribute and such there is who them sends by friendship
Et ceus que il veut, si fait vendre pour or et argent. Et ce
And those which he wishes so he-has sold for gold and silver And this
fait il, à ce que les balais soient chier et de grant vaillance;
does he to this that the balases be dear and of great worth
car se il en laissoit caver à chascun, il en trairoient
for if he thereof let dig to each they thereof would-take-out

tant que tout le monde en seroit plain, et seroient vil
so-much that all the world thereof would-be full and would-be vile
tenues. Et, pour ce, les fait il si pou caver et bien garder.
held And for this them has he so little dug and well guarded

Encore y a en ceste meisme contrée une autre montaigne
Further there is in this same country an other mountain
où se treuve l'azur; et est le plus fin du monde; et
where itself finds the-azure and it-is the most fine of-the world and
se treuve en vaine si comme l'argent. Encore y a autres
itself finds in vein so as the-silver Further there are other
montaignes où a argenteries moult grant quantité; si que
mountains where there-are silver-mines very great quantity so that
ceste province est moult riche; et est moult froide contrée.
this province is very rich and is very cold country
Encore sachiez que il y naist moult bons chevaux qui sont
Further know that it there is-born very good horses which are
de moult grant cours à merveilles; et ne portent nul fer du
of very great running to marvels and not they-wear any iron of-the
monde en leur piez; et si vont par montaignes et par
world on their feet and so they-go through mountains and through
mauvais chemins assez. Encore naissent en ceste contrée, es
bad roads plenty Further are-born in this country in-the
montaignes, faucons sacres qui sont moult bons et bien
mountains falcons saker which are very good and well
volant, et faucons laniers. Assez venoisons, et oiseaux y a
flying and falcons lanner Plenty venisons and birds there is
grant planté. Fourment ont bon et orge sans escorce. Il
great plenty Wheat they-have good and barley without husk They
n'ont point d'uille d'olive, mais de suseman assez et de noiz.
not-have whit of-oil of-olive but of sesame plenty and of walnuts

En cest regne a maint estroit pas moult mauvais et
In this realm there-are many narrow passes very bad and
si fort que il n'ont doute de nullui. Et leur citez et leur
so strong that they not-have fear of anyone And their cities and their
chasteaux sont en grans montaignes et en moult fors lieux.
castles are in great mountains and in very strong places
Il sont moult bon archier et grant chaceour; car la greigneur
They are very good archers and great hunters for the greater
partie d'eus vestent peaux de bestes; car il ont grant chierté
part of-them wear skins of beasts for they have great dearness
de draps; et les grans femmes, et les gentilz hommes, portent
of cloths and the great women and the noble men wear
draps telz comme je vous dirai: car il portent braies touz, et
cloths such as I to-you will-tell for they wear breeches all and
les font de toille de coton; et y mettent bien cent bras,
them make of cloth of cotton and therein put fully hundred ells
et de tel mains. Et ce font il pour demonstrer que il aient
and of such less And this do they for to-show that they have
grosses naches; car les hommes se delitent moult en ce.
big buttocks for the men themselves delight much in this

Or vous avons conté tout l'affaire de cest regne; si vous
Now to-you we-have told all the-affair of this realm so to-you
conterons d'unes diverses gens qui sont vers midi, loins
we-will-tell of-some diverse people who are toward south far
de ceste province dix journées.
from this province ten day-journeys

Ci devise de la province de Basiam. 47
Here describes of the province of Pashai

Il est voirs que dix journées vers midi loings de
It is true that ten day-journeys toward south far from
Balacian, a une province qui s'appelle Bacian, qui ont
Badakhshan there-is a province which itself-calls Pashai who have

langue par eus et sont ydolastres et sont brunes
language by themselves and are idolaters and are brown
genz. Il scevent moult d'enchantement et d'art dyabolique.
people They know much of-enchantment and of-art diabolic
Les hommes portent as oreilles aniaux et boucles d'or
The men wear in-the ears rings and buckles of-gold
et d'argent et de pierres et de perles. Il sont moult
and of-silver and of stones and of pearls They are very
malicieuse gent, et sages de leur coustumes. Ceste province
malicious people and wise in their customs This province
est moult chaude. Leur viande est char et ris.
is very hot Their food is meat and rice

Or vous laisserons de ce, et vous conterons d'une autre
Now you we-will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of-an other
province qui est sept journées de ci, devers le soleil et
province which is seven day-journeys from here toward the sun and
a nom Chesimur.
has name Kashmir

48 Ci devise de la province de Chesimur.
Here describes of the province of Kashmir

Chesimur est une province qui encore sont idolatres et
Kashmir is a province who still are idolaters and
ont languages par euls. Il scevent tant d'enchantemens
have languages by themselves They know so-much of-enchantments
de dyables que c'est merveilles; car il font parler aus
of devils that it-is marvels for they make speak the
ydoles. Il font changier le temps par enchantement, et
idols They make change the weather by enchantment and
font faire obscurtez; et font tant de grans choses qu'il
make make darknesses and do so-many of great things that-there
n'est nulz qui le peust croire s'il ne le veoit. Et si vous
not-is anyone who it could believe if-he not it saw And so you

di que il sont chief, et de là descendirent les ydoles;
I-tell that they are head and from there descended the idols
et de cel lieu pourroit on aler en la mer d'Ynde.
and from that place could one go into the sea of-India
Il sont brunes gens et maigres. Les fames sont moult
They are brown people and lean The women are very
belles, si comme brunes. Leur viande est char et lait et ris.
beautiful so as brown-ones Their food is meat and milk and rice
Il y a bon atrempé pais, ne trop chaut ne trop froit. Il y
It there is good temperate country nor too hot nor too cold It there
a cités et chasteaux assez. Il y a bois et desers et de fors
is cities and castles plenty It there is woods and deserts and of strong
pas, tant que il ne doute nullui; et se maintiennent
passes so-much that they not fear anyone and themselves maintain
par euls meismes, car il ont leur roy qui les maintient
by themselves same for they have their king who them maintains
en justice. Il ont hermites, selonc leur coustumes, qui
in justice They have hermits according-to their customs who
demeurent en leur hermitages, et font grant abstinence de
dwell in their hermitages and make great abstinence of
mangier et de boivre; et sont de luxure moult chastes et
eating and of drinking and are of lust very chaste and
se gardent de touz autres pechiez selonc leur loy. Il
themselves guard from all other sins according-to their law They
sont tenuz de leur genz moult sains hommes. Et vous di qu'il
are held by their people very holy men And you I-tell that-they
vivent moult grant aage et ont encore abbaies et moustiers
live very great age and have further abbeys and minsters
assez de leur ydoles. Et le corail qui se porte de nos
plenty of their idols And the coral which itself carries from our
contrées se vent moult en ceste contrée plus qu'en nulle autre.
countries itself sells much in this country more than-in any other

Or vous laisserons de ceste contrée et de ses parties pour ce
Now you we-will-leave of this country and of its parts for this
que, se nous alions avant, nous entrerions en Inde; et je n'y
that if we went forward we would-enter into India and I not-there
vueil pas ore entrer, pour ce que, à notre retour, vous conterai
wish at-all now to-enter for this that at our return to-you I-will-tell
d'Inde tout par ordre. Et pour ce retournerons arriere à la
of-India all by order And for this we-will-return back to the
contrée de Balaciam; car autre part ne s'en pourroit aler.
country of Badakhshan for other part not itself-thence could go

XIX · WAKHAN, PAMIR, KASHGAR, AND SAMARKAND

Twelve days from Badakhshan comes Wakhan; then the road climbs to the plain of Pamir, said to be the highest place in the world, with great wild sheep, where for twelve days there is no dwelling and fire hardly cooks. Forty days lead through Bolor, and Kashgar is a land of stingy merchants with Nestorian churches. At Samarkand, when Chagatai turned Christian, the Christians set a Saracen stone under a column of their church. After his death the Saracens refused silver for it, the lord gave three days, the Christians prayed, and on the morning set the column hung in the air.

49 Ci devise du grant flun Balaciam.
Here describes of-the great river Badakhshan

Quant l'en se part de Balaciam si chevauche on douze
When one himself departs from Badakhshan so rides one twelve
journées entre levant et grec par devers un flun qui
day-journeys between east and northeast by toward a river which
est du frere au seigneur de Balaciam, là où il a
is of-the brother to-the lord of Badakhshan there where it there-are
citez et chasteaux assez et habitations. Les genz aourent
cities and castles plenty and dwellings The people worship

Mahommet et sont vaillans d'armes. Et au chief de ces
Mohammed and are valiant of-arms And at-the end of these
douze journées si treuve l'en une province non pas trop
twelve day-journeys so finds one a province not at-all too
grant, car il n'y a que trois journées partout; et a
great for it not-there is but three day-journeys throughout and has
nom Vocan. Il aourent Mahommet et ont language par
name Wakhan They worship Mohammed and have language by
euls. Il sont prodomes d'armes et ont un leur seigneur
themselves They are worthy-men of-arms and have a their lord
que il appellent None, qui vaut à dire en françois
whom they call None which is-worth to say in French
Quens, et sont hommes au seigneur de Balaciam.
Count and they-are men to-the lord of Badakhshan

Il ont assez bestes sauvages de toutes manieres. Et quant
They have plenty beasts wild of all manners And when
l'en se part de ce petit pais, si chevauche l'en trois
one himself departs from this little country so rides one three
journées par grec, toutefoiz par montaignes, et monte l'en
day-journeys by northeast always through mountains and climbs one
tant que on dit que c'est le plus haut lieu du monde. Et
so-much that one says that it-is the most high place of-the world And
quant l'en est montez si treuve l'en un plain où il a un
when one is climbed so finds one a plain where it there-is a
flun moult bel et la meilleur pasture du monde; car une
river very fine and the best pasture of-the world for a
maigre jument y devendroit bien grasse en dix jours. Il y
lean mare there would-become well fat in ten days It there
a grant habondance de toutes sauvagine; et y a moutons
is great abundance of all wild-game and there are sheep
sauvages assez qui sont moult grant; car il ont les cornes
wild plenty which are very great for they have the horns

bien six paumes longues. Et de ces cornes font les pastours
fully six palms long And of these horns make the shepherds
escuelles pour mengier. Et font encore de ces cornes les
bowls for eating And they-make further of these horns the
clostures là où il demeurent de nuit pour les bestes.
enclosures there where they dwell by night for the beasts
Et par cest plain chevauche l'en bien douze journées, et
And through this plain rides one fully twelve day-journeys and
s'appelle Pamier. Et en toutes ces douze journées n'a
itself-calls Pamir And in all these twelve day-journeys not-there-is
nulle habitation ne nul herbage fors desert. Si que il
any habitation nor any pasture except desert So that it
convient que les passans portent ce que mestier leur est.
behooves that the passers-by carry that which need to-them is

Nul oisiau volant n'y a, pour le haut lieu et froit
Any bird flying not-there is for the high place and cold
qui y est. E si vous di que le feu, pour cel grant
which there is And so you I-tell that the fire for that great
froit, n'y est pas si cler, ne de tel chaleur comme en
cold not-there is at-all so bright nor of such heat as in
autre lieu, ne ne si pueent pas si bien cuire les viandes.
other place nor not so can at-all so well cook the foods

Or vous conterons encore avant par grec et par levant.
Now to-you we-will-tell further forward by northeast and by east
Et se vait l'en bien quarante journées toutesfois par
And himself goes one fully forty day-journeys all-times through
montaignes et par cotes; et par valées, par où passe
mountains and through slopes and through valleys through where pass
mains fluns, et mains desers lieus. Ne en tout ce chemin
many rivers and many desert places Nor in all this road

n'a habitation ne herbage; mais convient aus cheminans
not-there-is habitation nor pasture but it-behooves to-the travelers
porter avec euls ce que mestier leur est.
carry with them that which need to-them is

Ceste contrée est apelée Belor. Les genz demeurent es
This country is called Bolor The people dwell in-the
montaignes moult haut. Il sont ydres et moult sauvages, et
mountains very high They are idolaters and very savage and
ne vivent fors que de chassoi de bestes; et leur vestemens
not live except that from hunting of beasts and their garments
sont aussi de cuir de bestes; et sont mauvaise gent durement.
are also of hide of beasts and they-are wicked people greatly

Or laissons de ceste contrée et vous conterons de la
Now we-leave of this country and to-you will-tell of the
province de Cascar.
province of Kashgar

Ci devise du royaume de Cascar. 50
Here describes of-the kingdom of Kashgar

Cascar fu jadis royaumes; mais orendroit est suspost au
Kashgar was formerly kingdom but now is subject to-the
grant Kaan. Les genz aourent Mahommet. Il y a villes et
great Khan The people worship Mohammed It there is towns and
chasteaux assez; et la greigneur et la plus belle est Cascar.
castles plenty and the greatest and the most fair is Kashgar
Et sont aussi entre grec et levant. Il vivent d'art et
And they-are also between northeast and east They live from-craft and
de marchandise. Il ont moult beaux jardins et vignes et
from merchandise They have very fine gardens and vines and
belles possessions; et y a coton assez. Et de ceste contrée
fair possessions and there is cotton plenty And from this country
issent maint marchant qui vont parmi le monde faisant
issue many merchants who go through the world making

marchandises. Il sont moult escharce gent et mesurable; car
merchandises They are very stingy people and measured for
mal menjuent et mal boivent. En ceste contrée a maint
badly they-eat and badly they-drink In this country there-are many
crestien nestorins qui ont leur eglises. Les genz de la province
Christians Nestorians who have their churches The people of the province
ont language par soy; et dure ceste province cinq journées.
have language by themselves and lasts this province five day-journeys

Or laisserons de ceste province, et vous parlerons de
Now we-will-leave of this province and to-you will-speak of
Samarcan.
Samarkand

51 Ci dist de la grant cité de Samarcan.
Here tells of the great city of Samarkand

Samarcan est une grandisme cité et noble. Les genz
Samarkand is a very-great city and noble The people
sont crestiens et sarrazins. Il sont au neveu du grant
are Christians and Saracens They are of-the nephew of-the great
Kaan. Mais il s'entreheent moult, et (le neveu) a nom
Khan But they each-other-hate much and the nephew has name
Caidou. Elle est vers maistre. Et vous dirai une grant
Kaidu It is toward northwest And to-you I-will-tell a great
merveille qui avint en ceste cité.
marvel which happened in this city

Il fu voirs qu'il n'a encore granment que Sigatay frere
It was true that-it not-is yet long that Chagatai brother
charnel au grant Kaan, se fist crestien, qui estoit seigneur
carnal to-the great Khan himself made Christian who was lord
de ceste contrée, et de maintes autres. Et les crestiens,
of this country and of many others And the Christians
quant il virent que le seigneur estoit crestiens, si en orent
when they saw that the lord was Christian so thereof had

moult grant leesse. Et firent en celle cité une grant eglise
very great gladness And they-made in that city a great church
en honneur de saint Jehan Baptiste; et ainsi s'appelloit celle
in honor of saint John Baptist and thus itself-called that
eglise. Il prirent une moult belle pierre qui des sarrazins
church They took a very fine stone which of-the Saracens
estoit et la mistrent pour piler d'une coulombe qui ou
was and it put for pillar of-a column which in-the
milieu de celle eglise estoit, qui soustenoit la couverture. Or
middle of that church was which sustained the roof Now
avint que Sigatay mourut. Et quant li sarrazin virent que
it-happened that Chagatai died And when the Saracens saw that
il estoit mort, pour ce que il orent grant envie de celle
he was dead for this that they had great envy of that
pierre qui avoit esté leur, qui estoit à l'eglise des crestiens,
stone which had been theirs which was at the-church of-the Christians
si comme vous avez ouy; si distrent entr'eus qu'il estoit
so as you have heard so they-said between-themselves that-it was
temps de recouvrer la par amour ou par force. Et ce povoient
time of recovering it by love or by force And this could
il bien faire, car il estoient dix tans que les crestiens.
they well do for they were ten times than the Christians
Si s'assemblerent et alerent à l'eglise des crestiens et
So themselves-they-assembled and went to the-church of-the Christians and
distrent que, en toutes manieres il veulent leur pierre. Les
said that in all manners they wish their stone The
crestiens respondirent qu'elle estoit bien leur, mais que il
Christians answered that-it was well theirs but that they
lor donroient une quantité d'argent et leur quitassent.
to-them would-give a quantity of-silver and to-them they-should-quit-it
Et il respondirent que, pour nul avoir du monde, ne leur
And they answered that for any wealth of-the world not to-them

laisseroient. Si que tant alerent les paroles que le seigneur
they-would-leave-it So that so-far went the words that the lord
le sot, et fist commandement aus crestiens, si raisons estoit,
it knew and made command to-the Christians if reason was
que il s'accordassent aus sarrazins par monnoie, ou que
that they themselves-should-agree with-the Saracens by money or that
il rendissent leur pierre. Et leur donna de terme trois jours.
they should-render their stone And them he-gave of term three days
Que vous en diroie je? Sachiez que pour avoir nul ne
What you thereof would-tell I Know that for wealth any not
se voudrent accorder, li sarrazin, de laissier la pierre. Et
themselves wished to-agree the Saracens of leaving the stone And
ce faisoient il pour le despit aux crestiens, et non pour
this did they for the spite to-the Christians and not for
autre chose. Car il savoient bien que, se la pierre se levoit,
other thing For they knew well that if the stone itself raised
l'eglise charroit. De quoi les chrestiens en orent moult
the-church would-fall Of which the Christians thereof had very
grant ire, et ne savoient que faire. Si se tournerent en
great anger and not knew what do So themselves they-turned to
meilleur conseil: c'est que il prierent Jhesu Crist qu'il les
better counsel this-is that they prayed Jesus Christ that-he them
deust conseillier de ce fait, afin que sainte eglise ne fust
should counsel of this matter to-the-end that holy church not were
gastée, ne le nom du presidens, nom saint Jehans Baptiste,
wasted nor the name of-the patron name saint John Baptist
ne fust gastée ne quassée en celle siene eglise. Si que, quant
not were wasted nor broken in that his church So that when
vint au terme que le Seigneur leur donna, si trouverent le
came to-the term which the Lord them gave so they-found the
matin la pierre ostée dessouz la coulombe; et la coulombe
morning the stone removed beneath the column and the column

soustenoit la charge, et avoit le pié dessouz en vain; et
sustained the load and had the foot beneath in empty-air and
estoit aussi fort que quand la pierre y estoit. Et si avoit
was as strong as when the stone there was And so had
il bien, de la coulombe jusques à terre, trois paumes. Et les
it fully from the column as-far-as to ground three palms And the
sarrazins pristrent leur pierre com leur grant mal avanture. Si
Saracens took their stone with their great ill fortune So
que ce fu un moult grant miracle et beau, et est encore.
that this was a very great miracle and fair and is still
Ainsi ladite coulombe est, et sera tant que Diex voudra.
Thus the-said column is and will-be as-long as God will-wish

Or laissons de ce et irons avant; et vous conterons
Now we-leave of this and will-go forward and to-you will-tell
d'une province qui est appellée Carcan.
of-a province which is called Yarkand

Yarkand, held by the great Khan's nephew, has Nestorians and Jacobites beside its Mohammedans; Khotan and Pem, the great Khan's own, are rich in cotton, vines, and gardens. Pem's rivers yield jasper, and there a wife whose husband is gone more than twenty days may marry again. In sandy Charchan the people flee into the desert from armies, and the wind covers their tracks. At Lop travelers rest a week before the desert of Lop, a month across at its narrowest, with water at twenty-eight places; spirits call a straggler by name and lead him astray, they are heard even by day, and drums sound there.

52 Ci dist de la province de Carcan.
Here tells of the province of Yarkand

Carcan est une province qui dure de long cinq journées.
Yarkand is a province which lasts of long five day-journeys
Les genz sont de la loy Mahommet; et si y a aussi
The people are of the law (of-)Mohammed and so there are also
crestiens nestorins et jacobins. Il sont à celui meismes
Christians Nestorians and Jacobites They are to that same
seigneur nevou du grant Kaan. Il ont grant habondance
lord nephew of-the great Khan They have great abundance
de toutes choses. Mais [pour ce] qu'il n'y a chose qui
of all things But for this that-it not-there is thing which
à conter face, nous passerons outre, et vous conterons
to tell may-make we will-pass beyond and to-you will-tell
d'une province qui a nom Cotan.
of-a province which has name Khotan

53 Ci dist d'une province qui a nom Cotan.
Here tells of-a province which has name Khotan

Cotan est une province entre levant et grec et est
Khotan is a province between east and northeast and is
longue huit journées. Il sont au grant Kaan. Les gens
long eight day-journeys They are of-the great Khan The people

aourent Mahommet. Il y a citez et chasteaux assez; mais
worship Mohammed It there is cities and castles plenty but
la plus noble est Cotan qui est chief du regne. Et ainsi
the most noble is Khotan which is head of-the realm And thus
a aussi à nom le regne. Il y a habondance de toutes
has also as name the realm It there is abundance of all
choses; et y naist coton assez. Et si ont vignes et
things and there grows cotton plenty And so they-have vines and
jardins et possessions assez. Il vivent de marchandise et
gardens and possessions plenty They live from merchandise and
d'art. Il ne sont pas hommes d'armes.
from-craft They not are at-all men of-arms

Or nous partirons d'ici et vous conterons d'une autre
Now we will-depart from-here and to-you will-tell of-an other
province qui a nom Pein.
province which has name Pem

Ci dist de la province de Pein. 54
Here tells of the province of Pem

Pein est une province qui est longue cinq journées entre
Pem is a province which is long five day-journeys between
levant et grec. Les genz aourent Mahomet et sont au
east and northeast The people worship Mohammed and are of-the
grant Kaan. Il y a villes et chasteaux assez; mais la plus
great Khan It there is towns and castles plenty but the most
noble si est Pein, une cité qui est chief du regne. Il y a
noble so is Pem a city which is head of-the realm It there is
fluns en qui se treuvent jaspes et calcidoines assez. Il
rivers in which themselves find jaspers and chalcedonies plenty They
ont habondances de toutes choses et de coton. Il vivent de
have abundances of all things and of cotton They live from
marchandise et d'art; et ont une telle coustume comme je
merchandise and from-craft and have a such custom as I

vous dirai. Que quant une femme a son mari, et il se part
to-you will-tell That when a woman has her husband and he himself departs
pour aler en aucun voyage pour demourer, et il demeure plus
for to-go on some voyage for to-stay and he stays more
de vingt jours: maintenant que le termes est passez la fame
than twenty days at-once that the term is passed the woman
se marie; aussi fait l'homme, que il espouse où il veut. Et
herself marries also does the-man so-that he weds where he wishes And
sachiez que toutes les provinces que je vous ai dit: dès Cascar
know that all the provinces which I to-you have said from Kashgar
en ça, et de ci en avant, sont toutes de la grant Turquie.
on here and from here on forward are all of the great Turkey

Or laissons de ceste et vous conterons d'une autre
Now we-leave of this-one and to-you will-tell of-an other
province qui s'appelle Siarciam.
province which itself-calls Charchan

55 Ci dist de la province de Siarciam.
Here tells of the province of Charchan

Siarciam est une province de la grant Turquie, entre grec
Charchan is a province of the great Turkey between northeast
et levant. Les genz aourent Mahomet. Et si y a villes
and east The people worship Mohammed And so there are towns
et chasteaux assez; et la maistre cité du regne si est ceste
and castles plenty and the master city of-the realm so is this
Siarciam. Il y a fluns qui mainent jaspe et calcidoine,
Charchan It there is rivers which bring jasper and chalcedony
de quoi s'aporte à vendre au Çatay; de quoi il ont grant
of which itself-brings to sell to-the Cathay of which they have great
profit. Toute ceste province est sablon; et de Pein jusques
profit All this province is sand and from Pem as-far-as
ci est aussi tout sablon, de quoy y a maintes eaues ameres
here is also all sand of which there are many waters bitter

et mauvaises; mais bien se treuve en pluseurs lieux eaue
and bad but well itself finds in several places water
douce et bonne. Et quant aucun ost passe par la contrée,
sweet and good And when some host passes through the country
les genz fuient aux chemins avec leur femmes et leur enfans
the people flee to-the roads with their wives and their children
et leur bestes entre le sablon, deux ou trois journées, là
and their beasts into the sand two or three day-journeys there
où il sevent que aigue soit; là où il puissent vivre avec
where they know that water be there where they may live with
leur bestes; si que nuls ne les puet trouver, pour ce que
their beasts so that anyone not them can find for this that
le vent cueuvre les voies où il sont alé par le sablon.
the wind covers the ways where they are gone through the sand

Et quant l'en se part de Siarciam l'en chevauche bien
And when one himself departs from Charchan one rides fully
cinq journées par sablon là où il y a de mauvaises aigues
five day-journeys through sand there where it there is of bad waters
et ameres. Mais l'en treuve en avant lieu à aigue douce.
and bitter But one finds on forward place with water sweet

Et si n'y a chose qui face à mentevoir; pour ce nous
And so not-there is thing which may-make to mention for this we
irons avant, et vous conterons d'une province qui a nom
will-go forward and to-you will-tell of-a province which has name
Lop, où il a aussi une cité que l'en nomme Lop, qui
Lop where it there-is also a city which one names Lop which
est au chief de ces cinq journées que je vous ai dit dessus,
is at-the head of these five day-journeys which I to-you have said above
qui est à l'entrée du grandisme desert; si que les cheminans
which is at the-entrance of-the very-great desert so that the travelers
se reposent en ceste cité pour entrer ou desert.
themselves rest in this city for to-enter into-the desert

56 Ci devise de la cité de Lop.

Here describes of the city of Lop

Lop est une grant cité qui est au chief du desert qui

Lop is a great city which is at-the head of-the desert which

est appellez le desert de Lop; et est entre levant et grec.

is called the desert of Lop and is between east and northeast

Ceste cité est au grant Kaan. Les gens aourent Mahomet.

This city is of-the great Khan The people worship Mohammed

Et vous di que ceus qui veulent passer ce desert se

And to-you I-tell that those who wish to-cross this desert themselves

reposent en ceste ville une semaine pour refreschir euls et

rest in this town a week for to-refresh themselves and

leur bestes. Et puis s'appareillent, et prennent leur viande

their beasts And then themselves-make-ready and take their food

pour un moys pour eus et pour leur bestes. Et se

for a month for themselves and for their beasts And themselves

partent de ceste cité, et entrent ou desert. Et est tant

they-depart from this city and enter into-the desert And it-is so

lonc si comme on dit que en un an ne se chevaucheroit

long so as one says that in a year not itself would-ride

d'un chief à l'autre. Et là où il est mains larges, si met

from-one end to the-other And there where it is less wide so puts

on à passer un moys. Ce sont touz mons et valées de

one at crossing a month These are all mounts and valleys of

sablon; et n'y treuve l'en riens que mengier. Mais quant

sand and not-there finds one anything what to-eat But when

on a chevauchié un jour et une nuit, si treuve l'en aigue

one has ridden a day and a night so finds one water

douce, tant qu'il souffira bien à cinquante personnes ou à

sweet so-much that-it will-suffice well to fifty persons or to

cent, avec leurs bestes; mais à plus, non. Et par tout ce

hundred with their beasts but to more not And through all this

desert treuve l'en aigue en ceste maniere; si que l'en treuve
desert finds one water in this manner so that one finds
bien en ce passage, en vingt-huit lieus, aigue douce, mais
fully in this passage in twenty-eight places water sweet but
non grammment. Et en quatre lieus treuve l'en aigue amere
not greatly And in four places finds one water bitter
et mauvaise. Bestes n'y a, car il n'y trouveroient
and bad Beasts not-there are for they not-there would-find
que mengier; mais on y treuve une tel merveille comme
what eat but one there finds a such marvel as
je vous dirai: que quant l'en chevauche de nuit par ce
I to-you will-tell that when one rides by night through this
desert, et il avient que aucun remaigne et se desvoie
desert and it happens that someone remains and himself strays
de ses compaignons pour dormir, ou pour autre chose;
from his companions for to-sleep or for other thing
quant il cuide retourner et ataindre sa compaignie, si ot
when he thinks to-return and reach his company so he-hears
parler espriz qui semblent estre ses compaignons. Et tel
speak spirits which seem to-be his companions And such
fois l'appellent par son nom; si que pluseurs fois le font
times him-they-call by his name so that several times him they-make
desvoier en tel maniere que il ne puet puis trouver ses
stray in such manner that he not can afterward find his
compaignons. Et en ceste maniere en sont ja maint
companions And in this manner thereof are already many
mort et perdu. Et vous di que, de jours meismes, ot
dead and lost And to-you I-tell that by days same hears
on parler ces espriz. Et orez aucune fois sonner de
one speak these spirits And you-will-hear some time sound of

mains instrumens, et proprement tabour plus que autre.
many instruments and especially drum more than other
Et ainsi passent ce désert einssi que vous avez ouï.
And thus they-cross this desert thus as you have heard
Or vous laisserons de ce desert, et vous conterons des
Now you we-will-leave of this desert and to-you will-tell of-the
provinces que l'en treuve à l'issue de ce grant desert de
provinces which one finds at the-issue of this great desert of
Lop.
Lop

XXI · SHACHAU IN TANGUT

After thirty days of desert lies Shachau in Tangut, a land of idolaters with some Nestorians and Saracens. They rear a sheep for each child in honor of the idol, cook it before the idol, and eat it at home. Their dead are burned: the kin build a wooden house hung with cloth of gold and silk where the body passes, burn paper men, horses, camels, and money with it so the dead will have them in the other world, and keep the body in a painted coffin, set with food, for as long as the astrologers say, sometimes breaking a wall to carry it out.

57 Ci devise de la grant province de Tangut.
Here describes of the great province of Tangut
Quant l'en a chevauchié trente journées en ce desert
When one has ridden thirty day-journeys in this desert
que je vous ai dit si treuve l'en une cité qui est appellée
which I to-you have said so finds one a city which is called
Saciou qui est au grant Kaan. La province s'appelle
Shachau which is of-the great Khan The province itself-calls
Tangut. Il sont tuit ydolatres; mais auques y a crestiens
Tangut They are all idolaters but somewhat there are Christians

nestorins, et y a aussi sarrazins. Les idles ont language
Nestorians and there are also Saracens The idolaters have language
par euls. La ville est entre grec et levant. Il vivent
by themselves The town is between northeast and east They live
del profit des blés que il recueillent de la terre. Il
from-the profit of-the grains which they gather from the earth They
ont maintes abbaies et maint moustier plains de leur ydoles
have many abbeys and many minsters full of their idols
de pluseurs façons as queuls il font grant honneur et
of several fashions to-the which they do great honor and
grant reverence, et ont grant devotion, et leur font grans
great reverence and have great devotion and to-them make great
sacrefices. Car touz ceus qui ont enfans font nourrir un
sacrifices For all those who have children have nourished a
mouton en l'onneur de l'idle; et au chief de l'an ou à la
sheep in the-honor of the-idol and at-the end of the-year or at the
feste de l'ydole, cil qui ont nourri le mouton le menjuent
feast of the-idol those who have nourished the sheep it eat
avec les enfans devant l'idole et lui font grant reverence,
with the children before the-idol and to-it make great reverence
et les enfans aussi. Et quant il ont ce fait, si font tuit
and the children also And when they have this done so they-have all
cuire les moutons et les portent encore devant l'idole à
cooked the sheep and them carry again before the-idol with
grant reverence. Et illec les laissent tant que il ont dit
great reverence And there them leave until that they have said
leur office et leur prieres: que l'idole sauve leur enfans. Et
their office and their prayers that the-idol save their children And
dient que l'idole menjue la substance de la char. Puis que
they-say that the-idol eats the substance of the meat When that
il ont ce fait, si prennent celle char et la portent à leur
they have this done so they-take that meat and it carry to their

maisons; et mandent touz leur parenz et la menjuent à
houses and summon all their kin and it eat with
grant reverence et à grant feste. Et quant il ont mengiée
great reverence and with great feast And when they have eaten
la char, si recueillent les os qui sont demouré et les
the meat so they-gather the bones which are remained and them
metent en huche moult sauvement. Et sachiez que tous les
put in chest very safely And know that all the
ydolastre du monde quant muerent les vifs les font ardoir;
idolaters of-the world when they-die the living them have burned
et les portent ardoir. Les parens des mors font enmi celle
and them carry to-burn The kin of-the dead make amid that
voie une maison de fust, et la cueuvrent de draps à or
way a house of wood and it cover with cloths of gold
et de soie. Et quant le corps passe devant ceste maison,
and of silk And when the body passes before this house
si s'arrestent et getent, ceus de la maison, devant le corps,
so they-stop and throw those of the house before the body
vin et char et viandes assez. Et ce font il pour ce que
wine and meat and foods plenty And this do they for this that
il dient qu'en autele honneur sera receu en l'autre siecle.
they say that-in such honor he-will-be received in the-other world
Et quant il est aportez au lieu où il doit estre ars,
And when he is brought to-the place where he must be burned
ses parens font entaillier hommes de chart parchemin et
his kin have carved men of charter parchment and
de papier, et chevaus et chameux et roe comme besans;
of paper and horses and camels and coins like bezants
et toutes ces choses font ardoir avec le mort. Et dient
and all these things they-have burned with the dead And they-say
que en l'autre monde il aura ses esclas et ses bestes et
that in the-other world he will-have his slaves and his beasts and

ses biens avec lui, tant comme ces chartres qui seront
his goods with him as-many as these charters which will-be
arses; et vont sonnant devant le corps touz les instrumens
burned and they-go sounding before the body all the instruments
de la ville. Et sachiez que il ne feroient ardoir le corps
of the town And know that they not would-have burned the body
mort, se il ne fesoient veoir à leur astronomiens lequel
dead if they not had see to their astrologers which
jour doit estre bon à ce faire: c'est d'ardoir. Et quant il
day must be good for this to-do this-is of-burning And when he
leur dist lequel jour, si le gardent jusques au terme. Et
to-them says which day so it they-keep until to-the term And
il est tel fois que il gardent le corps bien six mois, ou
it is such times that they keep the body fully six months or
mains ou plus, selonc ce que il leur dist par son art.
less or more according-to that which he to-them says by his art

Et le gardent en ceste maniere que il font une quasse bien
And it they-keep in this manner that they make a coffin fully
une paume moult bien conjointe ensemble. Et est toute painte
a palm very well joined together And it-is all painted
moult soutilment; et le cueuvrent de beaux draps, et mettent
very subtly and it they-cover with fine cloths and put
dedens la quasse canfre et espices assez, afin que le corps
within the coffin camphor and spices plenty to-the-end that the body
ne pue. Et chascun jour, tant comme il le gardent, font
not stink And each day as-long as they it keep they-have
mettre table plaine de viande devant le mort. Et dient que
put table full of food before the dead And they-say that
s'ame vient, et menjue et boit; et li laissent tant comme l'en
his-soul comes and eats and drinks and to-it they-leave as-long as one
demeure pour mengier. Et ainsi le font chascun jour; et encore
stays for eating And thus it they-do each day and further

leur font acroire pis, les devins, que il leur dient aucune
them make believe worse the diviners for they to-them say some
fois, que ce n'est pas bon de traire le corps par la porte. Si
time that it not-is at-all good to draw the body through the door So
que, aucune fois, leur font rompre le mur, et traire le par
that some time them they-make break the wall and draw it through
là quant il le doivent porter ardoir. Et sachiez que tout en
there when they it must carry to-burn And know that all in
ceste maniere le font tuit li autre ydolatre de ces contrées.
this manner it do all the other idolaters of these countries

Or vous laisserons de ceste matiere, et vous conterons
Now you we-will-leave of this matter and to-you will-tell
d'une autre cité qui est vers maistre jouste le chief à cel
of-an other city which is toward northwest beside the head of that
desert.
desert

XXII · KAMUL AND CHINGINTALAS

The idolaters of Kamul live only for music, dancing, and pleasure, and a host gives his wife to a stranger for as long as he stays; when Möngke Khan forbade it they pleaded that their idols' favor hung on it, and he let them keep their shame. In Chingintalas a vein in a mountain yields the salamander, which is no beast: Mark's Turkish companion Zurficar dug it for the Khan, and its fibers, crushed and washed, are spun into cloth that fire cleans. A towel of it is at Rome to wrap Christ's shroud.

Ci dist de la province de Camul. 58

Here tells of the province of Kamul

Camul est une province qui jadis fu royaumes. Il y

Kamul is a province which formerly was kingdom It there

a villes et chasteaux assez; mais la maistre cité est Camul.

is towns and castles plenty but the master city is Kamul

Ceste province est enmi deux desers; car, de l'une part est le

This province is amid two deserts for on the-one part is the

grant desert de Lop, et de l'autre part a un petit desert de

great desert of Lop and on the-other part is a little desert of

trois journées. Les gens sont tuit ydolatres et ont language

three day-journeys The people are all idolaters and have language

par euls. Il vivent du fruit de la terre; car il en ont

by themselves They live from-the fruit of the earth for they thereof have

assez. Il sont hommes de grant soulaz, car il n'entendent

plenty They are men of great solace for they not-attend

à autre chose que à sonner instrumenz, et chanter, et baler

to other thing than to sounding instruments and singing and dancing

et à prendre grant deliz à leur corps. Et vous di que se

and to taking great delights in their body And to-you I-tell that if

un forestier vient à sa maison pour herbergier, il en est

a stranger comes to his house for to-lodge he thereof is

trop liez, et commande à sa fame que elle face tout le plaisir
very glad and commands to his wife that she do all the pleasure
au forestier. Et puis se part et s'en vait; et ne
to-the stranger And then himself he-departs and himself-thence goes and not
retourne jusques à tant que le forestier s'en soit partiz.
returns until to such-time that the stranger himself-thence be departed
Si que l'en puet soulacier avec sa fame tant comme l'en
So that one can solace with his wife as-long as one
veult; car elles sont belles fames. Et il le tiennent à grant
wishes for they are fair women And they it hold for great
honneur et n'en ont nulle honte. Car tuit cil de ceste
honor and not-thereof have any shame For all those of this
province sont si honni de leur moliers comme vous avez ouy.
province are so shamed by their wives as you have heard

Or avint que au temps de Mangu Kaan qui regnoit, et
Now it-happened that at-the time of Möngke Khan who reigned and
estoit seigneur de ceste province, sot ce fait; si leur manda,
was lord of this province he-knew this matter so to-them he-sent-word
commandant sur grant paine que il ne le feissent plus. Et
commanding upon great penalty that they not it should-do more And
quant il orent ce commandement, si en furent moult dolent.
when they had this command so thereof they-were very sorrowful
Si s'assemblerent ensemble et firent un moult grant present,
So themselves-they-assembled together and made a very great present
et l'envoierent au seigneur et li prierent que par grace il leur
and it-they-sent to-the lord and him begged that by grace he them
laissast faire leur usage que tuit leur ancestre avoient fait; et
should-let do their usage which all their ancestors had done and
que pour ceste usance leur donnoient, les ydoles, touz les biens
that for this usage them gave the idols all the goods
de la terre que il avoient; et que autrement ne sauroient
of the earth which they had and that otherwise not they-would-know

vivre, ne ne pourroient. Et quant le seigneur vit ce, que il le
live nor not they-could And when the lord saw this that they it
vouloient, si dist: «Puis que vous voulez vostre honte, et vous
wished so he-said Since that you wish your shame and you
l'aiez.» Si leur consenti à faire à leur volenté de leur mal usage.
it-have So them he-consented to do at their will of their evil usage
Si que touz jours l'ont maintenu et maintiennent encore.
So that all days it-they-have maintained and maintain still

Or vous laisserons de Camul, et vous conterons des
Now you we-will-leave of Kamul and to-you will-tell of-the
autres provinces qui sont entre tremontaine et maistre;
other provinces which are between north and northwest
et est au grant Kaan, qui a nom Chingin-talas.
and it-is of-the great Khan which has name Chingintalas

Ci dist de la province Chingintalas. 59
Here tells of the province Chingintalas

Chingin-talas est une province qui est encore ou chief
Chingintalas is a province which is also at-the head
du desert entre maistre et tremontaine. Elle est grant
of-the desert between northwest and north It is great
seize journées; et est au grant Kaan. Et y a cités
sixteen day-journeys and is of-the great Khan And there are cities
et chasteaux assez. Et y a generations de genz ydolatres
and castles plenty And there are generations of people idolaters
et sarrazins et quecques crestiens nestorins. En la fin de
and Saracens and some Christians Nestorians In the end of
ceste province vers tremontaine, a une montaigne où il
this province toward north there-is a mountain where it
a moult bonnes vaines d'acier, et d'andaine. Et sachiez
there-is very good veins of-steel and of-ondanique And know
bien qu'en ceste dite montaigne se treuve une vaine de
well that-in this said mountain itself finds a vein from

laquelle se fait la salemandre. Car sachiez de voir que
which itself makes the salamander For know of truth that
salemandre n'est pas beste, si comme on dist en no pais;
salamander not-is at-all beast so as one says in our country
mais est de vaine de terre; et orrez comment.
but is of vein of earth and you-will-hear how

Il est voirs que chascun set que, par nature, il n'est nul
It is true that each knows that by nature there not-is any
beste, ne nul animal qui peust vivre dedens le feu, pour ce
beast nor any animal which could live within the fire for this
que chascun animal est faiz des quatre elemens. Or avoie je,
that each animal is made of-the four elements Now had I
Je, Marc Pol, un compaignon turc qui avoit à nom Surficar;
I Mark Pol a companion Turk who had as name Zurficar
et estoit moult sages. Et conta, ledit turc, à Messire Marc
and was very wise And told the-said Turk to My-lord Mark
Pol, comment il avoit demouré, en ceste terre, trois ans, pour
Pol how he had dwelt in this land three years for
le grant Kaan, pour faire traire de ces salemandres pour le
the great Khan for to-have dug-out of these salamanders for the
seigneur. Et dist que l'en fait caver en celle montaigne, et
lord And he-said that one has dug in that mountain and
treuve l'en une vaine; et se prent cele vaine et s'esmenuise;
finds one a vein and itself takes that vein and itself-crumbles
et treuve l'en dedens comme files de laine; et puis les
and finds one within as threads of wool and then them
met on sechier. Et quant elle est seiche, si s'en ist
puts one to-dry And when it is dry so itself-thence it-goes
dedens granz mortiers de fer; et puis la font laver et
into great mortars of iron and then it they-have washed and
vet toute la terre, et demeure si comme filz qui samblent
goes all the earth and remains so as threads which seem

de laine. Et le fait l'en filer, et en fait l'en touailles. Et
of wool And it has one spun and thereof makes one towels And
quant elles sont faites, si ne sont pas bien blanches; mais
when they are made so not they-are at-all well white but
il les mettent dedens le feu. Et quant elle en est traite,
they them put within the fire And when it thereof is drawn
si est blanche comme noif. Et toutefois qu'elle devient orde,
so it-is white as snow And always that-it becomes dirty
si la met l'en devant le feu, si devient blanche.
so it puts one before the fire so it-becomes white

Ainsi est la vérité de la salemandre, non autrement. Et
Thus is the truth of the salamander not otherwise And
ceus meismes de ceste contrée le conterent en ceste maniere:
those same of this country it told in this manner
car qui le diroit autrement ce seroit bourde et fable.
for who it would-say otherwise this would-be jest and fable
Et si sachiez que, à Romme, en a une touaille que
And so know that at Rome thereof there-is a towel which
le grant Kaan y envoia à l'Apostoille pour moult beau
the great Khan there sent to the-Pope for very fine
present, pour mettre le saint suaire de Jhesu Crist dedens.
present for to-put the holy shroud of Jesus Christ within

Or vous laisserons de ceste province et vous conterons
Now you we-will-leave of this province and to-you will-tell
des autres qui sont entre grec et levant.
of-the others which are between northeast and east

Ten days of empty road bring one to Sukchur, where rhubarb grows in the mountains. Kampichu, head of Tangut, has three churches of Christians, and its idolaters many minsters and abbeys and a host of idols, some ten paces long, gilded and attended by other idols that seem to do them reverence. The idolaters' recluses keep five holy days a month, and the laity take up to thirty wives and marry their cousins. Maffeo and Mark stayed a year at Kampichu on a mission. Twelve days on, Etzina stands at the edge of a desert of forty days to the north.

60 Ci dist de la province de Suctur.

Here tells of the province of Sukchur

Quant l'en se part de ceste province que je vous ai dit,

When one himself departs from this province which I to-you have said

si chevauche l'en entre grec et levant dix journées. Et en

so rides one between northeast and east ten day-journeys And in

trestoute ceste voie n'a nulle habitation, se poi non; si

all this way not-there-is any habitation except little not so

que il n'y a chose qui à mentevoir face en notre livre.

that it not-there is thing which to mention may-make in our book

Et au chief de ces dix journées si treuve l'en une autre

And at-the end of these ten day-journeys so finds one an other

province qui est Suctur, en laquelle a citez et chateaux

province which is Sukchur in which there-are cities and castles

assez. Et la maistre cité si a nom Siccui. Il y a crestiens

plenty And the master city so has name Sukchu It there is Christians

et ydres, et sont au grant Kaan. La grant province

and idolaters and they-are of-the great Khan The great province

general, où ces trois provinces sont, est Tanqut. Et par

general where these three provinces are is Tangut And through

toutes les montaignes de ces provinces se treuve le reobarbe

all the mountains of these provinces itself finds the rhubarb

en grant habondance. Et illec l'achatent les marchans et le
in great abundance And there it-buy the merchants and it
portent par le monde. Il vivent du fruit de la terre.
carry through the world They live from-the fruit of the earth

Or vous laisserons de ce, et vous parlerons d'une cité
Now you we-will-leave of this and to-you will-speak of-a city
qui a nom Campicion.
which has name Kampichu

Ci dist de la cité de Campicion. 61
Here tells of the city of Kampichu

Campicion si est une cité qui est en Tanqut mesmes;
Kampichu so is a city which is in Tangut itself
et est moult grant cité et noble. Et est chief et seigneur
and is very great city and noble And it-is head and lord
de toute la province de Tanqut. Les genz sont ydolatres
of all the province of Tangut The people are idolaters
et sarrasins et crestiens; lesquels crestiens ont en ceste cité
and Saracens and Christians which Christians have in this city
trois eglises belles et grans; et les ydres ont maint moustier
three churches fair and great and the idolaters have many minsters
et maintes abbaies selonc leur usance. Et si ont
and many abbeys according-to their usage And so they-have
grandisme quantité d'ydoles, et si grans que bien sont
very-great quantity of-idols and so great that well they-are
longues dix pas; et telles y a qui sont plus petites; et
long ten paces and such there are which are more small and
telles y a qui sont de fust; et telles de terre, et telles
such there are which are of wood and such of earth and such
de pierre. Et sont toutes bien enquirées, et puis couvertes
of stone And they-are all well wrought and then covered

d'or; et pluseurs autres ydoles leur sont environ assez
with-gold and several other idols to-them are around quite
grans, et semble que il li font humilité et reverance.
great and it-seems that they to-it do humility and reverence

Et pour ce que ne vous ai encore conté tout le fait
And for this that not to-you I-have yet told all the matter
des ydolastres, je le vous vueil ci conter.
of-the idolaters I it to-you wish here to-tell

Car sachiez que les recluses qui tiennent regle des ydoles
For know that the recluses who hold rule of-the idols
vivent plus honnestement que les autres. Il se gardent
live more honestly than the others They themselves keep
de luxure, mais ne le tiennent pas à grant peché. Mais
from lust but not it hold at-all for great sin But
se il treuvent aucun qui ait géu contre nature come autre,
if they find someone who have lain against nature with other
il le condempnent à mort. Et si ont kalendrier aussi
they him condemn to death And so they-have calendar also
comme nous avons; et ont cinq jours le mois que il
as we have and they-have five days the month which they
gardent moult; car pour riens n'occirroient nul animal en
keep much for for anything not-they-would-kill any animal in
ces cinq jours, ne ne mengeroient char. Et font grant
these five days nor not they-would-eat meat And they-make great
abstinence, trop plus que les autres jours.
abstinence very-much more than the other days

Il prennent jusques à trente femmes, et mains si comme
They take as-many-as to thirty wives and fewer so as
il ont le povoir; car selonc ce qu'il ont richesce pour
they have the power for according-to that which-they have riches for
leur donner estat, il ont femmes. Mais sachiez que la
them to-give estate they have wives But know that the

premiere tiennent pour la meilleur. Et se il voit que aucune
first they-hold for the best And if he sees that any
de ses femmes ne soit bonne, si la chace, et en prent une
of his wives not be good so her he-drives-out and thereof takes an
autre s'il veut. Il prennent leur cousines et la femme qui
other if-he wishes They take their cousins and the wife who
auera esté à son pere, sanz sa mere, et vivent comme bestes.
will-have been to his father except his mother and live like beasts

Et vous laisserons de cestui, et vous conterons des autres
And you we-will-leave of this-one and to-you will-tell of-the other
provinces vers tremontaine. Et si demourerent en ceste cité
provinces toward north And so dwelt in this city
ledit Messire Maffe et Marc Pol, bien un an en légation.
the-said My-lord Maffeo and Mark Pol fully a year in mission

Or alons avant soixante journées vers tremontaine.
Now let-us-go forward sixty day-journeys toward north

Ci dist de la cité de Esanar. 62
Here tells of the city of Etzina

Quant l'en se part de ceste cité de Campicion, si
When one himself departs from this city of Kampichu so
chevauche on douze journées, et treuve on une cité qui a
rides one twelve day-journeys and finds one a city which has
nom Esanar, qui est au chief du desert du sablon, vers
name Etzina which is at-the head of-the desert of-the sand toward
tremontaine; et est de la province de Tangut. Et sont
north and is of the province of Tangut And they-are
ydolatres, et ont chamelz et bestail assez; et y naissent
idolaters and have camels and livestock plenty and there are-born
moult bons faucons sacres et lasniers assez. Il vivent
very good falcons saker and lanners plenty They live
du fruit de la terre et de bestail; car il ne sont gent
from-the fruit of the earth and from livestock for they not are people

de marchandise. En ceste cité convient prendre viande pour
of merchandise In this city it-behooves take food for
quarante jours; car quant l'en se part de ceste cité de
forty days for when one himself departs from this city of
Esanar, si entre l'en en un desert qui dure quarante journées
Etzina so enters one into a desert which lasts forty day-journeys
vers tremontaine, où ne se treuve nulle habitation ne
toward north where not itself finds any habitation nor
herbage; fors l'esté que on treuve genz; et c'est pour le
pasture except the-summer that one finds people and this-is for the
grant froit qu'il y fait l'iver. On y treuve bestes sauvages,
great cold that-it there makes the-winter One there finds beasts wild
car il y a petiz boscages de pin en aucuns lieux. Et quant
for it there is little groves of pine in some places And when
l'en a chevauchié ces quarante journées par ce desert, si
one has ridden these forty day-journeys through this desert so
treuve l'en une province vers tremontaine; et orrez quelle.
finds one a province toward north and you-will-hear which

Karakorum was the Tartars' first city. They lived in the northern plains and paid tribute to Prester John, who, seeing them multiply, tried to scatter them, so they fled north and rebelled. In 1187 they made Genghis Khan their king, a man of worth and prowess, and he conquered eight provinces while sparing their people. In 1200 he asked for Prester John's daughter; Prester John scorned him as his serf and said he would rather burn her, and the envoys brought back his answer.

Ci devise de la cité de Caracoron. 63

Here describes of the city of Karakorum

Caracoron est une cité qui dure trois milles, laquelle

Karakorum is a city which lasts three miles which

fu la premiere cité que les Tatares orent, quant il issirent

was the first city which the Tartars had when they issued

de leur contrées. Et si vous dirai toute la maniere quant

from their countries And so to-you I-will-tell all the manner when

il orent seigneurie premierement.

they had lordship first

Il fu voirs que les Tatars demouroient en tremontaine

It was true that the Tartars dwelt in north

entour Ciorcia. Et en cele contrée a grant plains où il

around Chorcha And in that country there-are great plains where it

n'avoit nulle habitation si comme cités et chasteaux; mais

not-there-was any habitation so as cities and castles but

il y avoit bonnes pastures et grant fluviaires, et moult

it there was good pastures and great rivers and many

d'eaues, et trop belles contrées et grans. Mais il n'avoient

of-waters and very fair countries and great But they not-had

seigneur nisun. Mais bien est voirs qu'il paioient rente et

lord any But well is true that-they paid rent and

treuage à un grant sire qu'il nommoient en leur langage

tribute to a great lord whom-they named in their language

Une can, qui vaut à dire en françois «Prestre Jehan». Et ce
Une Khan which is-worth to say in French Prester John And this
fu le Prestre Jehan de qui touz li monde parole de sa grant
was the Prester John of whom all the world speaks of his great
seigneurie. Le treu que il avoit d'euls si estoit de chascune
lordship The tribute which he had from-them so was of each
dix bestes une, et aussi avoit la disme de toutes leurs choses.
ten beasts one and also he-had the tithe of all their things

Or avint que il mouteploierent moult. Et quant Prestre
Now it-happened that they multiplied much And when Prester
Jehan vit qu'il estoit si grant gent, si ot paour que il ne
John saw that-it was so great people so he-had fear that they —
li feissent annui. Si pensa de departir les par pluseurs
to-him should-do harm So he-thought of dividing them through several
contrées; et envoia pour ce faire un de ses barons. Et quant
countries and sent for this to-do one of his barons And when
les Tatares virent ce, si en furent moult dolent. Si se
the Tartars saw this so thereof they-were very sorrowful So themselves
partirent tuit ensemble de celle contrée et alerent par un
they-departed all together from that country and went through a
desert lieu moult divers, vers tremontaine, tant que Prestre
desert place very strange toward north so-far that Prester
Jehan ne leur povoit nuire. Et s'estoient revelé à lui, et ne
John not them could harm And themselves-were rebelled to him and not
li paioient nulle rente. Et ainsi demourerent un temps.
to-him paid any rent And thus they-dwelt a time

Ci dist de Cinguins; comment il fu le premier kaan 64
Here tells of Genghis how he was the first khan
des Tatars.
of-the Tartars
Or avint que au temps de l'incarnation
Now it-happened that at-the time of the-incarnation
.m.c.lxxxvij. ans de Crist (1187) les Tatars
a-thousand-one-hundred-eighty-seven years of Christ 1187 the Tartars
firent un leur roy qui avoit à nom Cinguins Kaan. Il fu
made a their king who had as name Genghis Khan He was
homs de grant valeur et de grant sens et de grant prouesce.
man of great worth and of great sense and of great prowess
Et si vous di que quant il fu esleus Roy, touz les Tatars
And so you I-tell that when he was elected King all the Tartars
du monde, quant il sorent ce, qui estoient espandu par
of-the world when they knew this who were scattered through
celle contrée, s'en vindrent à lui et le tindrent pour
that country themselves-thence came to him and him held for
seigneur. Et il maintenoit la seigneurie moult bien. Et que
lord And he maintained the lordship very well And what
vous en diroie je? Il y vindrent tant de Tatars que ce
you thereof would-tell I It there came so-many of Tartars that this
estoit merveille. Et quant la seigneurie se vit à si grant
was marvel And when the lordship itself saw with so great
gent, si fist grant appareil faire d'armes, si comme dars et
people so he-had great equipment made of-arms so as darts and
pilles, et d'autres armes à leur usage; et ala conquestant
javelins and of-other arms at their usage and went conquering
toutes ces parties qui furent bien huit provinces. Et quant
all these parts which were fully eight provinces And when
il avoit conquesté, si ne faisoit aus genz nul mal, ne
he had conquered so not he-did to-the people any harm nor

nul domage de leur choses; mais laissoit de ses hommes
any damage of their things but he-left of his men
avec aucune partie des autres. Et le remenant de ses genz
with some part of-the others And the remnant of his people
menoit o lui pour conquester des autres provinces. Si que,
he-led with him for to-conquer of-the other provinces So that
en ceste maniere, conquesta moult de provinces. Et quant
in this manner he-conquered many of provinces And when
ceuls qui estoient conquesté veoient que il les sauvoit et
those who were conquered saw that he them saved and
gardoit si bien contre toutes gens, et n'avoient receu nul
guarded so well against all people and not-had received any
domage par lui, par la grant debonnaireté du seigneur; si
damage by him through the great graciousness of-the lord so
aloient moult volentiers avec lui. Et il estoient moult feel.
they-went very willingly with him And they were very faithful
Et quant il ot amassé tant de si grant gent que touz
And when he had amassed so-much of so great people that all
li mons en estoit couvers, si pensa de conquester une
the world thereof was covered so he-thought of conquering a
grant partie du monde, et envoia ses messages au Prestre
great part of-the world and sent his envoys to-the Prester
Jehan. Et ce fu à .m.cc. (1200) ans de Crist. Et
John And this was at a-thousand-two-hundred 1200 years of Christ And
li manda que il vouloit avoir sa fille à femme. Et
to-him he-sent-word that he wished to-have his daughter to wife And
quant le Prestre Jehan oy Cinguins Kaan li demandoit
when the Prester John heard Genghis Khan him asked
sa fille pour fame, si le tint à moult grant despit et
his daughter for wife so it he-held for very great spite and
dist aus messages: «Comment n'a il grant vergoigne de
said to-the envoys How not-has he great shame of

demander ma fille à fame? Et si set bien que il est
asking my daughter to wife And so he-knows well that he is
mon homes et mon serf. Retornez à lui et li ditez que
my man and my serf Return to him and to-him say that
je feroie, avant, ma fille ardoir, que je li donnasse à
I would-make rather my daughter burn than I to-him should-give to
fame; et que il convient que je le mete à mort, si comme
wife and that it behooves that I him put to death so as
traitre et desloial que il est contre son seigneur.» Puis
traitor and disloyal that he is against his lord Then
dist aus messages qu'il s'en partissent maintenant
he-said to-the envoys that-they themselves-thence should-depart at-once
et ne venissent jamais devant lui. Et quant les messages
and not should-come ever-more before him And when the envoys
oirent ce, il s'empartirent maintenant, et alerent tant
heard this they themselves-thence-departed at-once and went so-much
par leur jornées que il vinrent à leur seigneur et li
by their day-journeys that they came to their lord and to-him
conterent tout ce que Prestre Jehan li mandoit, que
told all that which Prester John to-him sent-word so-that
il ne li celerent riens.
they not from-him concealed anything

Swollen with anger, Genghis swears to make the insult cost dear, summons the greatest host ever seen, and warns Prester John, who laughs that the Tartars are no soldiers but gathers all his strength. Genghis camps on the fair plain of Tenduc, and Prester John comes to within twenty miles. The Saracen astrologers cannot say who will win, but the Christians split a cane, name its halves, and read a psalm; Genghis's half mounts Prester John's, and from then on he honors the Christians.

65 Comment Cinguins fist semondre sa gent pour aler sus
How Genghis had summoned his people for to-go upon
Prestre Jehan.
Prester John

Quant Cinguins Kaan oy la grant vilennie que Prestres
When Genghis Khan heard the great villainy which Prester
Jehans li mandoit, si en ot le cuer si enflé sur
John to-him sent-word so thereof he-had the heart so swollen against
lui que à poi qu'il ne li crevoit dedens le ventre;
him that at little that-it — to-him burst within the belly
car il estoit homs de trop grant seigneurie. Puis parla à
for he was man of very great lordship Then he-spoke at
chief de piece, et dist si haut que tuit cil qui entour lui
end of while and said so loud that all those who around him
estoient, l'oïrent: que jamais ne tenra la seigneurie se il
were him-heard that ever-more not he-will-hold the lordship if he
n'amende la vilennie que Prestre Jehan li avoit mandée, si
not-amends the villainy which Prester John to-him had sent-word so
grandement que onques honte ne fu achatée si chierement.
greatly that ever shame not was bought so dearly
Et prochainement li monstrera se il estoit son serf.
And soon to-him he-will-show if he was his serf

Adonc fist semondre ses ostz et toutes ses genz et
Then he-had summoned his hosts and all his people and
fist le greignor appareil qui onques feust veus ne oys. Et
made the greatest equipment which ever was seen nor heard And
fist assavoir au Prestre Jehan que il s'appareillast de
he-had made-known to-the Prester John that he himself-should-make-ready to
deffendre. Et quant Prestre Jehan sot certainement que il
defend And when Prester John knew certainly that he
venoit seur lui à si grant gent, si l'ot pour un gap et
came upon him with so great people so it-he-had for a jest and
pour nient; car il disoit qu'il n'estoient hommes d'armes.
for nothing for he said that-they not-were men of-arms
Mais toutes fois fist appareillier tout son esfors, et semont
But all times he-had made-ready all his force and summoned
toutes ses genz; et pensa de faire grant appareil; à ce que,
all his people and thought of making great equipment to this that
se celui venist, de prendre le, et de le mettre à mort. Car
if he came of taking him and of him putting to death For
sachiez que il fist un si grant appareil de tantes manieres de
know that he made a so great equipment of so-many manners of
genz estranges que ce fu la plus grant merveille du monde.
people foreign that this was the most great marvel of-the world

En tele maniere s'appareillierent les uns et les autres. Et
In such manner themselves-made-ready the ones and the others And
pourquoi vous en feroie je long conte? Cinguins Kaan,
why you thereof would-make I long tale Genghis Khan
avec tout son ost, s'en vint en un grandisme plain et
with all his host himself-thence came into a very-great plain and
bel, qui Tanduc estoit appellez, et estoit au Prestre Jehan.
fair which Tenduc was called and was of-the Prester John
Illec mist son champ; et vous di qu'il estoient si grant
There he-put his camp and to-you I-tell that-they were so great

multitude de gent que il n'en povoient savoir le nombre.
multitude of people that they not-thereof could know the number
Et quant il ouy nouvelles comme Prestre Jehans venoit,
And when he heard news how Prester John came
si fist moult grant joie, pour ce que celui lieu estoit
so he-made very great joy for this that that place was
moult biaus et moult larges à bataille faire; et pour ce
very fair and very wide for battle make and for this
l'attendoit illec moult volentiers et desiroit moult sa venue.
him-he-awaited there very willingly and desired much his coming

Mais ore laisse li conte à parler de Cinguins et de son
But now leaves the tale to speak of Genghis and of his
ost, et retornerai au Prestre Jehan et à ses genz.
host and I-will-return to-the Prester John and to his people

66 Comment li Prestre Jehans ala contre Cinguins.
How the Prester John went against Genghis

Or dist li contes que quant Prestres Jehans sot que Cinguins
Now says the tale that when Prester John knew that Genghis
Kaan avec son ost venoit sus lui, si li ala à l'encontre avec
Khan with his host came upon him so him he-went to the-encounter with
tout son esfors; et tant ala que il fu venus en cel plain
all his force and so-far he-went that he was come into that plain
de Tanduc. Et illec pris son champ pres à celui de Cinguins
of Tenduc And there took his camp near to that of Genghis
Kaan, à vingt mille, et se reposserent, chascun des osts
Khan at twenty miles and themselves rested each of-the hosts
deux jours, pour estre plus fres et plus haitiez à la bataille.
two days for to-be more fresh and more eager for the battle

En telle maniere comme vous avez ouy estoient les
In such manner as you have heard were the
deux granz osts en ce plain de Tanduc. Un jour fist
two great hosts in this plain of Tenduc One day had

venir, Cinguins Kaan, devant soi, astronomiens crestiens et
come Genghis Khan before himself astrologers Christian and
sarrazins, et lor commanda qu'il li seussent à dire
Saracen and them commanded that-they to-him should-know to say
qui vaincra la bataille, de ces deux osts: ou le sien, ou le
who will-win the battle of these two hosts either the his or the
Prestre Jehan? Li Sarrazin encerchierent et ne li seurent
Prester John The Saracens searched and not to-him knew
dire la vérité. Mes les crestiens l'en distrent la vérité,
say the truth But the Christians to-him-thereof told the truth
et li monstrerent, avant, tout appertement; car il firent
and to-him showed-it before all openly for they had
venir une cane, et la trancherent parmi de lonc, et mistrent
come a cane and it cut through of long and put
l'une part de çà et l'autre de là; et ne la tenoit nullui.
the-one part from here and the-other from there and not it held anyone
Et mistrent nom à l'une part de la cane: Cinguins Kaan; et
And they-put name to the-one part of the cane Genghis Khan and
à l'autre part: Prestre Jehan. Et lui distrent: «Or regardez
to the-other part Prester John And to-him said Now look
si verrez la vérité de la bataille, qui doit avoir le meilleur:
so you-will-see the truth of the battle who must have the better
celle qui venra sus l'autre, si doit gaagnier la bataille.»
that which will-come upon the-other so must win the battle

Et il leur respondi que il le verroit moult volentiers
And he them answered that he it would-see very willingly
et que il le facent maintenant. Adonc les astronomiens
and that they it do at-once Then the astrologers
crestiens lurent un siaume qui est ou Psaltier, et firent
Christian read a psalm which is in-the Psalter and made
leur autre enchantement. Et des maintenant voiant, touz,
their other enchantment And from at-once seeing all

la cane où estoit le nom de Cinguins Kaan, sans ce que
the cane where was the name of Genghis Khan without this that
nuls la touchast, si joint à l'autre et monta dessus celle
anyone it touched so joined to the-other and mounted above that
au Prestre Jehan. Et quant le seigneur vit ce, il en
of-the Prester John And when the lord saw this he thereof
ot moult grant joie. Et pour ce que il trouva les crestiens
had very great joy And for this that he found the Christians
en vérité leur fist touz jours grant honneur, et les tenoit
in truth them made all days great honor and them held
pour hommes de vérité à toujours mais de puis.
for men of truth for always more from then

XXVI · GENGHIS'S VICTORY; THE KHANS AND THE DEAD

In the greatest battle ever seen Genghis wins and Prester John is killed. Genghis reigns six more years and dies of an arrow in the knee at Caaju. After him reign Güyük, Batu, Hülegü, and Möngke, and now Kublai, more powerful than all of them and than all the Christian and Saracen kings together. Every khan is buried in the Altai, however far away he dies, and those met on the road are killed to serve him; twenty thousand died when Möngke was carried there. The Tartars move between winter and summer pastures with round houses of rods and carts covered in black felt, and a man may take a hundred wives.

67 Ci devise de la bataille de Cinguins Kaan, et de Prestre
Here describes of the battle of Genghis Khan and of Prester
Jehan.
John

Et apres ces deux jours quant les osts se furent bien
And after these two days when the hosts themselves were well
reposées, si s'armerent tous deux les parties, et se
rested so themselves-armed all two the parties and themselves

combatirent ensemble durement; et fu la greigneur bataille
fought together hard and was the greatest battle
qui onques fust veue. Et ot moult grant mortalité,
which ever was seen And there-was very great mortality
et d'une part et d'autre. Mais au derrain vainqui la
both of-one part and of-other But at-the last won the
bataille Cinguins Kaan. Et fu en ceste bataille occis Prestre
battle Genghis Khan And was in this battle killed Prester
Jehan. Et de ce jour, en avant, perdi toute sa terre que
John And from this day on forward he-lost all his land so-that
Cinguins Kaan la conquesta chascun jour. Et vous di que,
Genghis Khan it conquered each day And to-you I-tell that
depuis celle bataille, regna, Cinguins Kaan, six ans, dont
since that battle reigned Genghis Khan six years whence
il ala conquestant touz jours maintes provinces, et mainte
he went conquering all days many provinces and many
cité et maint chastel. Mais, au chief de six ans, ala en
city and many castle But at-the end of six years he-went to
un chastel qui avoit nom Calatuy; et illec fu feru d'une
a castle which had name Caaju and there was struck by-an
saiete ou genoul; si que il morut du coup, dont ce fu
arrow in-the knee so that he died of-the blow whence this was
grant domages, pour ce que il estoit preudomme et sage.
great damage for this that he was worthy-man and wise

Or vous ai devisé comment les Tatares orent premierement
Now to-you I-have described how the Tartars had first
seigneur qui avoit nom Cinguins Kaan, et comment il
lord who had name Genghis Khan and how he
vainqui premierement le Prestre Jehan. Si vous conterai qui
defeated first the Prester John So to-you I-will-tell who
regna apres, et de leur coustumes et de leur usages.
reigned after and of their customs and of their usages

68 Ci dist qui regna apres Cinguins Kaan et lor coustumes.
Here tells who reigned after Genghis Khan and their customs
Sachiez tout vraiement que apres Cinguins-Kaan, qui fu leur
Know all truly that after Genghis-Khan who was their
premier seigneur, regna Cuy-Kaan, et le tiers: Batuy-Kaan,
first lord reigned Güyük-Khan and the third Batu-Khan
et le quart Alacou-Kaan; le quint Mongu-Kaan, le sisiesme
and the fourth Hülegü-Khan the fifth Möngke-Khan the sixth
est Cublay-Kaan, qui est seigneur, et le plus puissant des
is Kublai-Khan who is lord and the most powerful of-the
autres cinq qui furent avant de lui. Car se touz les autres
other five who were before of him For if all the other
cinq feussent ensamble n'auroient il tant de povoir comme
five were together not-would-have they so-much of power as
cestui a. Encore vous di plus, que se tuit li crestien du
this-one has Further to-you I-tell more that if all the Christians of-the
monde, leur empereours et leur roys feussent ensemble, des
world their emperors and their kings were together of-the
cretiens et des sarrazinz n'auroient il tant de povair, ne
Christians and of-the Saracens not-would-have they so-much of power nor
ne porroient tant fere comme cestui Cublay porroit; lequel
not could so-much do as this Kublai could who
est seigneur de touz les Tatars du monde: et de ceus de
is lord of all the Tartars of-the world both of those of
levant et de ceus de ponent. Car tuit sont ses hommes et
east and of those of west For all are his men and
subgez à lui. Et ce grant pooir vous monstrerai je en ce
subjects to him And this great power to-you will-show I in this
notre livre tout appertement. Et sachiez que tuit li grant
our book all openly And know that all the great
Kaan, et tuit cil qui sont descendu de leur premier seigneur
Khans and all those who are descended from their first lord

Cinguins-Kaan, sont portez ensevelir en une montaigne qui
Genghis-Khan are carried to-be-buried in a mountain which
est appellée Altay. Et où que que le seigneur muire, si est
is called Altai And where that that the lord may-die so is
il portez ensevelir en celle dite montaigne, avec les autres. Car
he carried to-be-buried in that said mountain with the others For
se il estoient cent journées loing de celui lieu, si convient
if they were hundred day-journeys far from that place so behooves
il qu'il soit aportez pour ensevelir à ladite montaigne.
it that-he be brought for to-bury at the-said mountain

Et si vous dirai un grant merveille; car quant il portent
And so to-you I-will-tell a great marvel for when they carry
le corps pour ensevelir avec les autres, touz ceus que il
the body for to-bury with the others all those whom they
treuvent en la voie sont tuit mort par ceus qui le corps
find on the way are all killed by those who the body
conduient. Et dient: «Alez servir votre seigneur en l'autre
conduct And they-say Go serve your lord in the-other
siècle.» Car il cuident de vérité que touz ceus qu'il tuent
world For they think of truth that all those whom-they kill
doivent aler servir leur seigneur en l'autre monde. Et ce
must go serve their lord in the-other world And this
meismes font il des chevaus; car quant le seigneur muert
same do they of-the horses for when the lord dies
si occient tout le meillour cheval que il ait; à ce que
so they-kill all the best horse which he have to this that
il l'ait en l'autre monde, si comme il croient. Et vous
he it-have in the-other world so as they believe And to-you
di pour certain en vérité que quant Mongu Kaan morut,
I-tell for certain in truth that when Möngke Khan died

devant, plus de .xx.m. (20,000) personnes furent occises
before more than twenty-thousand 20,000 persons were killed
en la voie, si comme je vous ai dit, qui estoient encontre.
on the way so as I to-you have said who were in-the-way
Or de puis que nous avons commencié des Tatars, si
Now from since that we have begun of-the Tartars so
vous en dirai autre chose. Li Tatars demourent [l'iver]
to-you thereof I-will-tell other thing The Tartars dwell the-winter
en plains et en lieus chaus où il aient herbage à
in plains and in places hot where they may-have grass with
bonnes pastures pour leur bestes; et l'isté demeurent en
good pastures for their beasts and the-summer they-dwell in
froiz lieus en montaignes et en valées là où il treuvent
cold places in mountains and in valleys there where they find
yaues et boscages et pastures à leur bestes. Il ont mesons
waters and groves and pastures for their beasts They have houses
de verges et les cueuvrent de cordes; et sont rondes;
of rods and them cover with cords and they-are round
et les portent avec eus là où il vont; car il lient
and them carry with them there where they go for they bind
les verges si bien, et si ordenéement, que il les portent
the rods so well and so orderly that they them carry
moult legierement. Et toutes les foiz que il drecent et
very lightly And all the times that they raise and
tendent leur mesons, la porte est toute foiz vers midi. Il
pitch their houses the door is all times toward south They
ont charretes couvertes de feutres noirs, si bien, que nule
have carts covered with felts black so well that any
pluie n'y puet passer; et la font traire et mener aus
rain not-there can pass and them they-have drawn and led by-the
bues et à chameus. Et sus charretes portent il leur fames
oxen and by camels And upon carts carry they their wives

et leur enfans. Et les dames achatent et vendent, et font
and their children And the ladies buy and sell and do
tout ce qui à leur maris et à leur mesnie apartient; car
all that which to their husbands and to their household belongs for
les hommes ne s'empeschent de riens que de chacier et
the men not themselves-busy with anything but with hunting and
d'oiseler; et de faucons, et d'ostoirs et de fait d'armes,
with-fowling and with falcons and with-goshawks and with deed of-arms
si comme gentis homs. Il vivent de chars et de lait, et
so as noble men They live from meats and from milk and
de chaçoison; et menjuent toutes chars et de chevaus et
from hunting and eat all meats both of horses and
de chiens et de ras et de faraon; car il en y a moult
of dogs and of rats and of Pharaoh's-rats for it thereof there is many
es plains en pertuis souz terre. Il boivent lait de jument,
in-the plains in holes under ground They drink milk of mare
et se gardent que pour riens du monde ne toucheroit,
and themselves guard that for anything of-the world not would-touch
l'uns, la fame de l'autre; car trop le tienent pour malvaise
the-one the wife of the-other for too-much it they-hold for wicked
chose et vilaine. Les dames sont bonnes et loiables vers
thing and villainous The ladies are good and loyal toward
leur maris, et font moult bien ce qui leur besoigne.
their husbands and do very well that which to-them is-needful

Et font les mariages en ceste maniere; car chascun puet
And they-make the marriages in this manner for each can
prendre jusques à cent fames, se il a le pooir de maintenir
take as-many-as to hundred wives if he has the power of maintaining
les. Et leur donne douaire aus fames à l'encontre au pere
them And to-them he-gives dower to-the wives in the-return to-the father
ou à la mere de la fame. Mes il tiennent pour plus meilleur
or to the mother of the wife But they hold for more better

et plus leal la premiere fame. Il ont plus filz que les autres
and more loyal the first wife They have more sons than the other
genz, pour ce que il ont tantes fames comme je vous ai
people for this that they have so-many wives as I to-you have
dit. Il prennent bien leur cousine; et se le pere muert, il
said They take well their cousin and if the father dies he
prenne bien la fame son pere por tant qu'elle n'ait esté sa
takes well the wife (of-)his father for so-much that-she not-have been his
mere. Et ce fait le greigneur filz des autres; mes les autres
mother And this does the eldest son of-the others but the others
non. Et prent bien encore la fame son frere quant il muert.
not And he-takes well further the wife (of-)his brother when he dies
Et quant il se marient, si font moult grant noces.
And when they themselves marry so they-make very great wedding

XXVII · THE TARTARS' MARRIAGES, ARMS, AND JUSTICE

The Tartars' god Natigai guards their children, herds, and grain, and is fed from their meat. They drink koumiss, from mare's milk, wear silk and furs, and are the world's best archers and hardiest people. A lord's host is ranked by tens, hundreds, and thousands; in need they ride ten days on their horses' blood, and they feign flight to shoot as they flee. Those of Cathay now keep the idolaters' ways, and those of the East the Saracens'. A small theft costs seven to a hundred and seven blows, a great one death unless repaid ninefold, and dead children are married by contract.

69 Ci dist du dieu des Tatars.
Here tells of-the god of-the Tartars
Et sachiez que leur loy est telle comme je vous dirai. Car
And know that their law is such as I to-you will-tell For
il ont un leur dieu que il appellent Nacigay; et dient
they have a their god whom they call Natigai and they-say

que il est dieu terrien qui garde leur enfans et leur bestes
that he is god earthly who guards their children and their beasts
et leur blez. Et li font grant reverence et grant
and their grains And to-him they-make great reverence and great
honneur; car chascun en tient un en sa maison. Et est
honor for each thereof holds one in his house And it-is
fait de feutre et de draps; et aussi font sa femme et
made of felt and of cloths and also they-make his wife and
ses enfans. La moullier il metent à senestre; et les enfans
his children The wife they put at left and the children
sont tuit ainssi fait comme il est. Et quant il menjuent, si
are all thus made as he is And when they eat so
prennent de la char grasse et li oignent la bouche, et
they-take of the meat fat and to-him anoint the mouth and
à sa femme et à ses enfans. Et puis prennent du brouet
to his wife and to his children And then they-take of-the broth
de la char, et l'espandent dehors la porte de la maison. Et
of the meat and it-spill outside the door of the house And
dient que leur dieu et sa mesnie a eu sa part du mengier.
they-say that their god and his household has had his part of-the eating
Il boivent lait de jument en tel maniere qu'il semble
They drink milk of mare in such manner that-it seems
vin blanc et bon à boivre. Et l'appellent quemis. Leur
wine white and good to drink And it-they-call koumiss Their
vesteures sont tout le plus de draps à or, et de draps
garments are all the most of cloths of gold and of cloths
de soie; fourrées de riches pennes, sebelines et d'ermins;
of silk furred with rich furs sables and of-ermines
et de vairs et de volpes moult richement. Et touz lor
and of vairs and of foxes very richly And all their
hernois sont moult beaus et de grant vaillance. Leur armes
harness are very fine and of great worth Their arms

sont arc et pilet et espées et maces; mais des arcs
are bow and spear and swords and maces but of-the bows
s'aident plus que d'autre chose; car il sont trop bons
themselves-they-help more than of-other thing for they are very good
archiers, les meilleurs que l'en sache ou monde. Et en
archers the best that one know in-the world And on
leur dos portent armeures de cuir bouli qui sont moult
their back they-wear armors of leather boiled which are very
fort. Il sont bons hommes d'armes, et vaillant en bataille
strong They are good men of-arms and valiant in battle
durement. Et seuffrent plus de travail qu'autre gent; car
hard And they-suffer more of toil than-other people for
mainte fois, quant il ont besoing, il iront un mois sanz
many times when they have need they will-go a month without
porter viande, fors que il vivent du lait de jument;
carrying food except that they live from-the milk of mare
et mengeront des chars que il chaceront des arcs. Et
and will-eat of-the meats which they will-hunt with-the bows And
leur cheval iront paissant de l'erbe des champs; car il
their horses will-go grazing of the-grass of-the fields for they
n'ont besoing de porter orge, ne paille, ne aveine, et sont
not-have need of carrying barley nor straw nor oats and they-are
moult obéissant à leur seigneur. Et quant il est besoins, il
very obedient to their lord And when it is need they
demoureront toute nuit à cheval à toutes leurs armes. Et
will-stay all night on horse with all their arms And
toute fois vont leurs chevaus paissant; et sont la gent ou
all times go their horses grazing and they-are the people in-the
monde qui plus endurent grans paines, et grans mesaises,
world who most endure great pains and great hardships
et qui mains veulent de despens; et qui meilleur sont pour
and who least wish of expenses and who better are for

conquester terres et regnes. Et il y pert bien, si comme
to-conquer lands and realms And it there appears well so as
vous avez ouy, et orrez en cest livre: car pour certain il
you have heard and will-hear in this book for for certain they
sont ore seigneur de la plus grant partie du monde. Il
are now lords of the most great part of-the world They
sont moult bien ordené en ceste maniere que je vous dirai.
are very well ordered in this manner which I to-you will-tell

Sachiez que quant aucun seigneur Tatar vait en ost, il
Know that when some lord Tartar goes on host he
maine o lui cent mille hommes à cheval. Il fait un
leads with him hundred thousand men on horse He makes a
chevetaine à chascune disaine, et à chascune centaine et à
captain to each ten and to each hundred and to
chascun millier et à chascune disaine de milliers, si que il
each thousand and to each ten of thousands so that he
n'a à commander que à dix hommes; et ces dix hommes
not-has to command but to ten men and these ten men
n'ont à commander que autre dix. Et ainssi n'a à faire
not-have to command but other ten And thus not-has to do
chascuns que à dix hommes; si que chascuns respont à sa
each but with ten men so that each answers to his
chevetaine si bien et si ordenément que c'est merveilles; car
captain so well and so orderly that it-is marvels for
il sont moult gent au commandement du seigneur. Et
they are very gentle at-the command of-the lord And
appellent les .c.m. (100,000) un tuc; et les .x.m.
they-call the a-hundred-thousand 100,000 a tuc and the ten-thousand
(10,000) un toman; et un millier: [un miny]; guz, por
10,000 a toman and a thousand a miny guz for
centenier; et: [un], pour disenier. Et quant l'ost chemine,
centurion and un for decurion And when the-host travels

il ont toutes fois deux cents hommes à cheval bien montez
they have all times two hundred men on horse well mounted
pour guetter deux journées avant, qui tousjours leur vont
for to-watch two day-journeys before who always to-them go
devant. Et ainssi ont derrier, et ou costé, d'un costé
before And thus they-have behind and on-the side on-one side
et de l'autre; si que tousjours font leur ost guetter de
and on the-other so that always they-make their host watch from
toutes pars, à ce que l'ost ne fust assailli. Et quant il
all parts to this that the-host not were assailed And when they
vont loing en ost, si ne portent point de hernois se non
go far on host so not they-carry whit of harness except not
que chascun a deus bouchiaus de cuir en quoi il metent
that each has two leather-bottles of leather in which they put
leur lait que il boivent; et un petit pot de terre à cuire
their milk which they drink and a little pot of earth to cook
la char qu'il menjuent, et une petite tente pour estre
the meat that-they eat and a little tent for to-be
à la pluie. Et quant il ont grant besoing, si chevauchent
at the rain And when they have great need so they-ride
bien dix journées sans nulle viande, et sans faire feu.
fully ten day-journeys without any food and without making fire
Mais vivent du sanc de leur chevaux: car il poignent
But they-live from-the blood of their horses for they prick
la vaine de leur chevaux et les font saigner encontre leur
the vein of their horses and them make bleed against their
bouche; et buvra tant que il sera saoul; puis l'estoupent.
mouth and will-drink so-much that he will-be sated then it-they-stop
Et ont lait sec qui est comme paste, et de cel lait
And they-have milk dried which is like paste and of that milk
portent. Et quant il le veulent mengier, si le metent en
they-carry And when they it wish to-eat so it they-put in

yaue et le batent tant qu'il se destrempe, et puis le
water and it beat so-long that-it itself dissolves and then it
hument. Et quant il viennent à la bataille contre les anemis,
gulp And when they come to the battle against the enemies
il les vainquent en ceste maniere; car il n'ont point de
they them defeat in this manner for they not-have whit of
honte à fouir, et en fuiant se tournent, et traient de
shame at fleeing and in fleeing themselves they-turn and shoot from
leur arcs moult bien à leur anemis, de quoi il leur font
their bows very well at their enemies of which they to-them do
grant domages. Et l'ont si acoustumé lor chevaus que il
great damages And they-have-it so accustomed their horses that they
se tournent çà et là si tost que c'est merveille, miex
themselves turn here and there so quickly that it-is marvel better
que ne feroit uns chiens; et aussi bien se combatent
than — would-do a dog and as well themselves they-fight
en fuiant que quant il sont chiere à chiere, pour ce
in fleeing as when they are face to face for this
qu'en fuiant leur traient leur saiettes à grant planté. Et
that-in fleeing at-them they-shoot their arrows in great plenty And
est arriere dos à ceus qui les vont chaçant, et qui cuident
it-is behind back to those who them go chasing and who think
avoir gaaignié la bataille. Et quant il voient que il leur
to-have won the battle And when they see that they to-them
ont mort leur bestes et navrées, et des hommes aussi; si
have killed their beasts and wounded and of-the men also so
retornent et viennent tuit ensamble à la bataille si bien et
they-return and come all together to the battle so well and
si ordenéement avec si grant remour, que il les metent
so orderly with so great uproar that they them put
dès maintenant à desconfiture; car il sont moult preus à
from at-once to defeat for they are very valiant in

bataille et forz et adurés. Si que quant leur anemis cuident
battle and strong and hardened So that when their enemies think
avoir gaaignié, quant il les voient fuir, si ont perdu; car
to-have won when they them see flee so they-have lost for
il retornent de maintenant quant il leur semble que poins
they return from at-once when it to-them seems that point
est. Et en ceste maniere ont ja vaincu mainte bataille.
is And in this manner they-have already won many battle

Tout ce que je vous ai compté [sont] les vies et les
All that which I to-you have told are the lives and the
coustumes des droiz Tatars. Mais je vous di que orendroit
customs of-the true Tartars But I to-you tell that now
sont moult abastardi; car ceus qui usent au Cata se
they-are much bastardized for those who dwell in-the Cathay themselves
maintiennent aus usages des ydolastres de la contrée; et
maintain in-the usages of-the idolaters of the country and
ont laissié leur loy. Et ceus qui usent en Levant se
have left their law And those who dwell in East themselves
tiennent en la maniere des sarrazins.
hold in the manner of-the Saracens

Il maintiennent leur justice en ceste maniere, que quant
They maintain their justice in this manner that when
il ont emblé aucune petite chose, on leur donne, par la
they have stolen some little thing one to-them gives by the
seignourie, sept bastonnées, ou dix sept, ou vingt sept, ou
lordship seven blows or ten seven or twenty seven or
trente sept, ou quarante sept; et en ceste maniere vont jusques
thirty seven or forty seven and in this manner they-go as-far-as
à cent et sept, selonc le mal que il aura fait; et pluseurs
to hundred and seven according-to the harm which he will-have done and several
en muerent de ces bastonnées. Et se il emble un cheval ou
thereof die of these blows And if he steals a horse or

autre grant chose dont il doie perdre la vie, si le trenchent
other great thing for-which he must lose the life so him they-cut
parmi à une espée. Mais bien est voirs se il se puet
through with a sword But well is true if he himself can
rachater, et donner neuf tans que ce qu'il a emblé vaut, il
ransom and give nine times what that which-he has stolen is-worth he
eschappe. Et chascun seignor ou autre qui ait bestes chascun
escapes And each lord or other who have beasts each
le fait seignier de son seignal, soit chevaus, jumens, chameus,
it has marked with his mark be-it horses mares camels
bues, vaches, et toutes bestes grosses; puis les laissent aler
oxen cows and all beasts large then them they-let go
paistre par les plains, sanz nulle garde. Et se mellent
graze through the plains without any guard And themselves they-mingle
ensamble; et puis est rendue chascune à son seignor, par le
together and then is rendered each to its lord by the
seignal qui est conneus. Leur bestes menues sont moult grans
mark which is known Their beasts small are very great
et grasses outre mesure; et les font garder à pastours.
and fat beyond measure and them they-have guarded by shepherds

Et encore ont un autre usage, que quant aucuns aura
And further they-have an other usage that when someone will-have
une fille et elle muert tant qu'elle soit mariée; et aucun
a daughter and she dies before that-she be married and someone
ait eu filz qui soit mors avant que il soit maries; si font leur
have had son who be dead before that he be married so make their
peres et leur meres grans noces de l'un mort à l'autre. Et
fathers and their mothers great wedding of the-one dead to the-other And
les marient; et font leur chartres. Et quant les chartres du
them they-marry and make their charters And when the charters of-the
mariage sont faites, si les font ardoir, à ce que il dient que
marriage are made so them they-have burned to this that they say that

ceus le puissent savoir en l'autre monde, et eus tenir pour
those it may know in the-other world and themselves hold for
mari et moulier. Et s'appellent, depuis, parens aussi comme
husband and wife And themselves-call since kin also as
s'il eussent esté vis. Et tout ce que il s'acordent pour
if-they had been alive And all that which they themselves-agree for
donner l'un à l'autre, pour douaire, si le font enpaindre
to-give the-one to the-other for dower so it they-have painted
en chartres ceus qui le doivent donner, et le font ardoir. Et
on charters those who it must give and it have burned And
dient que les mors auront toutes ces choses en l'autre monde.
they-say that the dead will-have all these things in the-other world

Or vous ai monstré et dist les usages et les coustumes
Now to-you I-have shown and said the usages and the customs
aus Tatars; mais non pas que je ne vous compte du
of-the Tartars but not at-all that I not to-you tell of-the
grant fet du grant Kaan: Or est le seigneur de touz
great deed of-the great Khan Now is the lord of all
les Tatars et de la grant emperial court. Mais je le vous
the Tartars and of the great imperial court But I it to-you
conterai en ce livre quant lieus et temps en sera; car
will-tell in this book when place and time thereof will-be for
bien sont merveilleuses choses de metre en escript. Mais
well are marvelous things for to-put in writing But
des or mais vueil retourner à mon conte que je lessai
from now more I-wish to-return to my tale which I left
d'or plain quant nous commençames des faiz des Tatars.
at-the-edge full when we began of-the deeds of-the Tartars

Forty days north of Karakorum and the Altai lies the plain of Bargu, whose Mecrit people live by herds and hunting, and forty days more reach the ocean, where peregrine falcons nest and gerfalcons breed so far north that the polestar stands to the south. The book returns to Kampichu and goes east to Erguiul in Tangut and to Sinju, with its great wild yaks and tame ones that plow. There the musk deer gives musk from a swelling at its navel, the pheasants have tails of ten palms, and a beautiful girl of low birth may marry high.

Ci devise du plain de Caracoron et de leur diverses 70
Here describes of-the plain of Karakorum and of their diverse
coustumes que il ont.
customs which they have

Et quant l'en se part de Caracoron et d'Altay, là où
And when one himself departs from Karakorum and from-Altai there where
se metent les corps des seigneurs Tatars, si comme je vous
themselves put the bodies of-the lords Tartars so as I to-you
ai conté ça arriere; si s'en vait quarante journées par
have told here back so himself-thence goes forty day-journeys by
tremontaine; et se treuve un plain que l'en appelle le plain
north and himself finds a plain which one calls the plain
de Bargu. Les genz [sont] appellez Mescript; et sont moult
of Bargu The people are called Mecrit and are very
sauvages genz; et vivent de bestial; et leur coustumes ont
savage people and live from livestock and their customs they-have
comme Tatars; et sont au grant Kaan. Il n'ont nuls blés
as Tartars and are of-the great Khan They not-have any grains
ne nuls vins. L'isté ont chisseys de bestes et d'oisiaus
nor any wines The-summer they-have huntings of beasts and of-birds
assez; mais l'iver n'en ont neent pour le grant froit.
plenty but the-winter not-thereof they-have anything for the great cold

Et quant l'en a chevauchié quarante journées par ce grant
And when one has ridden forty day-journeys through this great
plain, si treuve l'en la mer occeane, illec, aus montaignes là
plain so finds one the sea ocean there at-the mountains there
où li faucons pelerins ont leur nis. Car en ces montaignes
where the falcons peregrine have their nests For in these mountains
ne treuve l'en ne homme ne fame, ne beste ne oiseaux,
not finds one nor man nor woman nor beast nor birds
fors que une maniere d'oiseaux qui sont appellez barguerlac
except that a manner of-birds which are called barguerlac
de quoi les faucons se paissent. Il sont granz comme
on which the falcons themselves feed They are great as
perdris, et touz les piez comme papegai, et la queue comme
partridges and all the feet as parrot and the tail as
arundele; et sont moult volant. Et c'est pour le grant froit
swallow and they-are very flying And it-is for the great cold
que nul animal n'y puet habiter. Et quant le grant Kaan
that any animal not-there can dwell And when the great Khan
veut des faucons pelerins des nis, il envoie jusque là pour
wishes of-the falcons peregrine of-the nests he sends as-far-as there for
euls; et que en isles qui sont en celle mer là naissent les
them and that in isles which are in that sea there are-born the
gerfax. Et sachiez de voir, que ce lieu est tant en tremontaine,
gerfalcons And know of truth that this place is so-far in north
que l'estoile de tremontaine vous demeure auques à delivre
that the-star of north you remains somewhat at free
demi jour. Et on y treuve tant de gerfax en cel lieu
half day And one there finds so-many of gerfalcons in that place
que le seignor en a tant comme il veut. Et n'entendez
that the lord thereof has as-many as he wishes And not-understand

pas que ceus, que les crestiens portent en Tartarie, voisent
at-all that those which the Christians carry into Tartary go
au grant Kaan; mais illec portent au seigneur du Levant.
to-the great Khan but there they-carry to-the lord of-the East

Or vous ai conté tout le fait de ces provinces vers
Now to-you I-have told all the matter of these provinces toward
tremontaine, jusques à la grant mer que il n'y a plus
north as-far-as to the great sea so-that it not-there is more
terre. Or vous conterai des autres provinces jusques au
land Now to-you I-will-tell of-the other provinces as-far-as to-the
grant Kaan; et retournerons à une province que nous
great Khan and we-will-return to a province which we
avons escript en cest livre, qui est apellez Campicui.
have written in this book which is called Kampichu

Ci dist du royaume de Erguiul. 71
Here tells of-the kingdom of Erguiul

Quant l'en se part de Campicui que je vous ai dit,
When one himself departs from Kampichu which I to-you have said
l'en chevauche cinq journées là où l'en ot parler mains
one rides five day-journeys there where one hears speak many
espriz de nuit. Et au chief de ces cinq journées, vers
spirits by night And at-the end of these five day-journeys toward
levant, l'en treuve un royaume qui est apelez Erguiul; et
east one finds a kingdom which is called Erguiul and
est au grant Kaan; et est de la grant province de Tangut
is of-the great Khan and is of the great province of Tangut
où il a pluseurs royaumes. Les genz sont crestiens
where it there-are several kingdoms The people are Christians
nestorins et ydolastres, et de ceus qui aourent Mahommet.
Nestorians and idolaters and of those who worship Mohammed

Il y a en cest royaume citez assez, mais la maistre cité
It there is in this kingdom cities plenty but the master city
est Erguiul. Et de ceste cité vers seloc puet l'en aller
is Erguiul And from this city toward southeast can one go
es contrées du Catay. En ceste voie par seloc, alant
into-the countries of-the Cathay On this way by southeast going
es contrées du Catay, treuve l'en une cité qui a nom
into-the countries of-the Cathay finds one a city which has name
Singuy. Et y a villes et chastiaus assez, et est de Tangut
Sinju And there are towns and castles plenty and it-is of Tangut
mesmes; et est au grant Kaan. Et sont idles et genz
itself and is of-the great Khan And they-are idolaters and people
qui aourent Mahommet. Et si y a des crestiens aussi. Il
who worship Mohammed And so there are of-the Christians also They
ont bues qui sont sauvages, et sont grans comme olifans,
have oxen which are wild and are great as elephants
et sont moult biaus à veoir, car il sont tuit pelu sanz de
and are very fine to see for they are all hairy except of
dos. Et sont blanc et noir, et ont le pel bien lonc quatre
back And they-are white and black and have the hair fully long four
paumes, et sont si beaus que c'est merveilles. Il en ont
palms and are so fine that it-is marvels They thereof have
de privez assez, que il prennent quant il sont petiz. Si que
of tame-ones plenty which they take when they are small So that
il en ont assez, et les chargent et font tuit leur service
they thereof have plenty and them load and do all their service
avec euls; et labourent la terre aussi. Et labourent bien
with them and till the earth also And they-till fully
deux tans que nulles autres bestes, pour leur grant force.
two times more-than any other beasts for their great strength

En ceste contrée, treuve l'en le meilleur muglias du
In this country finds one the best musk of-the
monde; et vous dirai comment il naist. Il ont en ceste
world and to-you I-will-tell how it is-born They have in this
contrée une maniere de beste sauvage qui est comme une
country a manner of beast wild which is like a
gasele, et a le poil de cerf moult gros et les piez comme
gazelle and has the hair of deer very thick and the feet like
gasele, et la queue; mais elle n'a nulles elles; mais elle
gazelle and the tail but it not-has any horns but it
a quatre dens; deux dessoubs et deux dessus; qui sont
has four teeth two below and two above which are
longues bien trois dois; et sont soutilles; et vont deux en
long fully three fingers and are slender and go two in
sus et deux en jus; et est moult belle beste. Et se treuve
up and two in down and it-is very fine beast And itself finds
le muglias en ceste maniere. Car quant il l'ont prise, si
the musk in this manner For when they it-have taken so
li treuvent au nombril, entre le cuir et la char, une
in-it they-find at-the navel between the skin and the flesh an
empostume de sanc que il taillent avec tout le cuir et l'en
abscess of blood which they cut with all the skin and it
traient fors. Et celui sanc qui est dedens cele empostume,
they-draw out And that blood which is within that abscess
si est le mugliat dequoy vient si grant oudeur. Et en
so is the musk from-which comes so great odor And thereof
a en ceste contrée moult grant quantité de ces bestes.
there-is in this country very great quantity of these beasts

Il vivent de marchandise et d'art, et ont habondance
They live from merchandise and from-craft and have abundance
de blés. La province est grant .xxvj. journées. Il y a aussi
of grains The province is great twenty-six day-journeys It there is also

faisans moult grans qui sont bien deux tans plus granz que
pheasants very great which are fully two times more great than
les notres et ont la plume longue bien dix paumes. Autres
the ours and have the plumage long fully ten palms Other
oisiaus y a assez de maintes manieres qui ont moult
birds there are plenty of many manners which have very
belles plumes de diverses couleurs. Les genz sont idles et
fine plumes of diverse colors The people are idolaters and
sont grasses genz et ont petiz nes, et les cheveus noirs;
are fat people and have small noses and the hair black
et n'ont nulles barbes fors aucuns peles au guernon. Les
and not-have any beards except some hairs on-the mustache The
fames n'ont point de poil nulle, se non les cheveus de
women not-have whit of hair any except not the hairs of
la teste; et sont moult belles et blanches de toutes façons.
the head and are very beautiful and white of all fashions
Il se delitent moult en luxure et prennent fames
They themselves delight much in lust and take wives
assez; car leur loy ne leur usage ne le leur deffent pas.
plenty for their law nor their usage not it to-them forbids at-all
Et s'il y a aucune fame qui soit de vil lignage, puis
And if-it there is some woman who be of base lineage provided
qu'elle soit belle, si l'espousent les plus grans du pais.
that-she be beautiful so her-wed the most great of-the country
Et encore donnent au pere et à la mere de la garce de
And further they-give to-the father and to the mother of the girl of
l'or à grant planté, si comme il se seront acordé.
the-gold in great plenty so as they themselves will-be agreed

Or nous partirons de ci, et vous conterons d'une autre
Now we will-depart from here and to-you will-tell of-an other
province vers levant.
province toward east

Egrigaia weaves the finest camlets of camel's wool. Tenduc, the land of Prester John, is ruled by his descendant King George for the great Khan; its ruling Christians, called Argons, are the handsomest and wisest of the unbelievers there, and this is the country we call Gog and Magog. Seven days east, near Cathay, they weave cloth of gold and there is a silver mine. At Chagan-nor the Khan has a palace among lakes full of swans and cranes of five kinds, and he keeps a valley of partridges.

Ci devise le Royaume de Egrigaia. 72

Here describes the Kingdom of Egrigaia

Et quant l'en se part de Erguiul si chevauche l'en vers

And when one himself departs from Erguiul so rides one toward

levant .viij. jornées; si treuve l'en une province que l'en appelle

east eight day-journeys so finds one a province which one calls

Egrigaia, où il a citez et chastiaus et est de Tangut.

Egrigaia where it there-are cities and castles and it-is of Tangut

La maistre cité a nom Calacian. Les genz sont idles; mais il

The master city has name Kalachan The people are idolaters but it

y a trois belles églises de crestiens nestorins. Il sont au

there is three fine churches of Christians Nestorians They are of-the

grant Kaan. Et si fait l'en en ceste cité moult de cameloz de

great Khan And so makes one in this city many of camlets of

laine de chameux les plus beaux du monde. Et de blans

wool of camels the most fine of-the world And of white-ones

aussi; car il ont chameus blans, et sont les meilleurs du

also for they have camels white and they-are the best of-the

monde. Il en font grant quantité. Et d'illec les portent

world They thereof make great quantity And from-there them carry

les marchans au Catai, et par les autres parties du monde.

the merchants to-the Cathay and through the other parts of-the world

Or nous partirons de ceste province vers levant, et
Now we will-depart from this province toward east and
vous conterons d'une province qui est appellée Tanduc. Et
to-you will-tell of-a province which is called Tenduc And
entrerons en la terre qui fu du Prestre Jehan.
we-will-enter into the land which was of-the Prester John

73 Ci devise de la province de Tanduc et des descendants
Here describes of the province of Tenduc and of-the descendants
du Prestre Jehan.
of-the Prester John

Tanduc est une province vers levant en laquelle a
Tenduc is a province toward east in which there-are
villes et chasteaux assez. Et sont au grant Kaan, car touz
towns and castles plenty And they-are of-the great Khan for all
les descendans du prestre Jehan sont au grant Kaan. La
the descendants of-the prester John are of-the great Khan The
maistre cité nomme l'en Tanduc. Et de ceste province en est
master city names one Tenduc And of this province thereof is
roy un du lignage au prestre Jehan. Son nom est Jorge; et
king one of-the lineage of-the prester John His name is George and
tient la terre pour le grant Kaan, mais non pas toute celle
he-holds the land for the great Khan but not at-all all that
que tenoit prestre Jehan; mais aucune partie. Mais je vous di
which held prester John but some part But I to-you tell
que toutefois ont eu, ses roys, du parenté au prestre Jehan,
that always have had his kings of-the kindred of-the prester John
des filles et du lignage des grands Kaans pour fame.
of-the daughters and of-the lineage of-the great Khans for wife

En ceste province treuve l'en les pierres de quoi l'en fait
In this province finds one the stones of which one makes
l'azur, qui est aussi comme une vaine de terre, et est moult
the-azure which is also like a vein of earth and is very

fin. Et en y a assez. Et encore y a cameloz assez que on
fine And thereof there is plenty And further there is camlets plenty which one
fait du poil des chameus, moult fins et de diverses couleurs.
makes from-the hair of-the camels very fine and of diverse colors
Il vivent de bestes et du fruit de la terre. Et si font
They live from beasts and from-the fruit of the earth And so they-make
auques marchandise et art. Et la seigneurie est aus crestiens,
somewhat merchandise and craft And the lordship is to-the Christians
ainsi comme je vous dirai. Mais il y a idolastres assez et
thus as I to-you will-tell But it there is idolaters plenty and
sarrasins. Il ont une generation de gens, ces crestiens qui ont
Saracens They have a generation of people these Christians who have
la seigneurie, qui s'appellent Argon, qui vaut à dire Gasmul;
the lordship who themselves-call Argon which is-worth to say Gasmul
et sont plus beaus hommes que les autres mescréans et plus
and are more fine men than the other misbelievers and more
sages. Et pour ce ont il la seigneurie et sont bons marchans.
wise And for this have they the lordship and are good merchants

Sachiez que en ceste cité de Tanduc estoit la maistre cité où
Know that in this city of Tenduc was the master city where
prestre Jehan tenoit son maistre siege, quant il seigneurioit les
prester John held his master seat when he lorded-over the
Tatars. Et encore y demeurent ses hoirs; car cestui Jorge que
Tartars And still there dwell his heirs for this George whom
je vous ai nommé est du lignage au prestre, si comme je
I to-you have named is of-the lineage of-the prester so as I
vous ai compté et dit. Et est le .vje. seigneur depuis Prestre
to-you have told and said And he-is the sixth lord since Prester
Jehan. Et ce est le lieu que nous apellons pais Goc et Magoc;
John And this is the place which we call country Gog and Magog
mais il l'appellent Ung et Mugul, car en ceste province avoit
but they it-call Ung and Mugul for in this province there-were

deux generations de gens avant que les Tatars partissent de là.
two generations of people before that the Tartars departed from there
Ung estoient ceulx du pais; et Mugul estoient les Tatars; et
Ung were those of-the country and Mugul were the Tartars and
pour ce sont il aucune fois appellez Mugul pour les Tatars.
for this are they some times called Mugul for the Tartars

Et quant l'en a chevauchié sept journées par levant, en
And when one has ridden seven day-journeys by east in
ceste province, si s'accoste l'en aus contrées du Catay; si
this province so approaches one to-the countries of-the Cathay so
qu'en chevauchant ces sept journées treuve l'en citez et
that-in riding these seven day-journeys finds one cities and
chasteaux assez. Les genz aourent Mahommet; et si y a
castles plenty The people worship Mohammed and so there are
idles et crestiens nestorins aussi. Il vivent de marchandise
idolaters and Christians Nestorians also They live from merchandise
et d'art; car il labourent draps d'or que l'en appelle
and from-craft for they work cloths of-gold which one calls
nasich, molisins et naques, et draps de soie de maintes
nasich molisins and naques and cloths of silk of many
autres manieres. Car aussi comme nous avons les draps de
other manners For also as we have the cloths of
soie et de laine, et de maintes autres manieres en notre pais,
silk and of wool and of many other manners in our country
aussi ont il les draps d'or et de soie de pluseurs manieres.
also have they the cloths of-gold and of silk of several manners

Il sont tous au grant Kaan. Il y a une cité qui a nom
They are all of-the great Khan It there is a city which has name
Suydatui là où se font moult d'ars qui besoingnent aus
Sindachu there where themselves make many of-arms which are-needful to-the
genz du seigneur. Et en une montaigne de ceste province a
people of-the lord And in a mountain of this province there-is

un lieu qui est moult bonne argentiere dont l'en trait argent
a place which is very good silver-mine from-which one draws silver
assez; et est appellée Ydifir. Il ont chaçoison et oiselez assez.
plenty and it-is called Ydifu They have hunting and fowling plenty
Or nous partirons de ceste province et irons trois
Now we will-depart from this province and will-go three
journées avant. Et apres ces trois journées l'en treuve une cité
day-journeys forward And after these three day-journeys one finds a city
que l'en appelle Cyagannor en laquelle a un grant palais,
which one calls Chagan-nor in which there-is a great palace
qui est ou grant Kaan, car il demeure en cest palais moult
which is of-the great Khan for he dwells in this palace very
volentiers, pour ce que il y a lacs et rivieres assez là où
willingly for this that it there is lakes and rivers plenty there where
demeurent ses nes. Et si y a de moult de manieres d'oysiaus
dwell his swans And so there is of many of manners of-birds
assez. Et aus plains a grues et perdris et fesans et
plenty And in-the plains there-are cranes and partridges and pheasants and
autres oisiaus a grant planté, si que, pour le grant oiseleis y
other birds in great plenty so that for the great fowling there
demeure le seigneur plus volentiers pour son deliç. Il oisele
dwells the lord more willingly for his delight He fowls
leans aus gerfaus et faucons de quoi il a grant soulas.
in-there with-the gerfalcons and falcons of which he has great solace
L'en treuve cinq manieres de grues en ces contrées, qui
One finds five manners of cranes in these countries which
sont de ceste maniere. La premiere maniere est toute noire
are of this manner The first manner is all black
comme corbel, et sont moult grandes; l'autre maniere est
as raven and they-are very great the-other manner is
toute blanche; les elles ont moult belles; car sur les elles
all white the wings they-have very fine for upon the wings

ont oiselles rons de couleur d'or, et sont greigneurs que
they-have eyes round of color of-gold and they-are greater than
nulles des autres manieres assez. La tierce maniere sont des
any of-the other manners plenty The third manner are of-the
notres. La quarte maniere sont petites, et ont aus oreilles
ours The fourth manner are small and have at-the ears
pennes longues, pendans vermeils et noirs moult beaus. La
feathers long hanging vermilion and black very fine The
quinte maniere sont toutes grises, et le chief vermeil et noir
fifth manner are all gray and the head vermilion and black
et bien fait; et sont moult grandes. Et empres ceste cité
and well made and they-are very great And beside this city
a une vallée en laquelle le seigneur a fait faire pluseurs
there-is a valley in which the lord has had made several
maisonnettes esquelles il fait tenir grandisme quantité de
little-houses in-which he has kept very-great quantity of
perdris. Et en y a si grant quantité que c'est merveille.
partridges And thereof there is so great quantity that it-is marvel
Et a en la garde de ces perdris pluseurs hommes. Et
And there-are in the keeping of these partridges several men And
quant le grant Kaan y vait, il en a tant comme il veut.
when the great Khan there goes he thereof has as-many as he wishes

Or irons avant trois journées entre grec et tremontaine.
Now we-will-go forward three day-journeys between northeast and north

At Shangdu the Khan has a marble palace painted with gold and a park of sixteen miles with game for his two hundred gerfalcons, where he hunts with a leopard on his crupper; there too stands a palace of gilded cane held by two hundred silk cords. Leaving on August 28, he has the milk of his ten thousand white mares poured out for the spirits. His enchanters from Tibet and Kashmir keep off bad weather, make his cups rise to him, and eat the executed; for their idols' feasts they ask him for black-headed sheep, they keep monasteries of two thousand shaven monks, and the Sensin among them live on bran.

Ci devise de la cité de Ciandu. 74

Here describes of the city of Shangdu

Et quant l'en a chevauchié [trois journées] entre grec

And when one has ridden three day-journeys between northeast

et tremontaine, partant de ceste cité que je vous ai

and north departing from this city which I to-you have

dit dessus, si treuve l'en une cité, au chief de ces trois

said above so finds one a city at-the end of these three

journées, qui a nom Ciandu, que le grant Kaan, qui

day-journeys which has name Shangdu which the great Khan who

ore regne, fist faire. Et si y a un moult beau palais de

now reigns had made And so there is a very fine palace of

marbre. Les chambres sont toutes paintes à or dedens, à

marble The chambers are all painted with gold within with

ymages et à figures de bestes et d'oiseaus, et d'arbres

images and with figures of beasts and of-birds and of-trees

et de fleurs de pluseurs manieres si bien et si sotilment

and of flowers of several manners so well and so subtly

que c'est un delit et une merveille à veoir. Entor cel palais

that it-is a delight and a marvel to see Around that palace

si a murs qui comprennent bien .xvj. mille de terre,

so there-are walls which enclose fully sixteen miles of land

en quoy a dedens fontaines et fleuves et rivieres, et
in which there-are within fountains and streams and rivers and
belles praeries assez. Et y a de bestes de toutes manieres
fine meadows plenty And there are of beasts of all manners
sauvages, non fieres dedans que le seigneur y fait metre,
wild not fierce within which the lord there has put
et les tient pour donner à mengier aus jerfaus et aus
and them keeps for to-give to eat to-the gerfalcons and to-the
faucons que il tient laiens en mue, qui sont plus de deux
falcons which he keeps in-there in mew which are more than two
cenz jerfaus sans les faucons. Et il mesmes les va veoir
hundred gerfalcons without the falcons And he himself them goes see
chascune sepmaine seant en mue. Et vait aucune foiz par
each week sitting in mew And he-goes some times through
leans à cheval sur son cheval; et a derriere lui sur la crupe
in-there on horse upon his horse and has behind him upon the crupper
un liepart. Et quant il voit aucune beste qui lui plaist, si
a leopard And when he sees some beast which to-him pleases so
laisse aler le liepart et la prent et la donne aus oiseaus,
he-lets go the leopard and it takes and it gives to-the birds
qui sont en mue, à mengier. Et ce fait il pour son deduit.
which are in mew to eat And this does he for his delight

Encore a laiens en la praierie un autre palais, lequel
Further there-is in-there in the meadow an other palace which
est tout de cane, si comme je vous dirai. Il est touz dorez
is all of cane so as I to-you will-tell It is all gilded
dedens et labourez moult soubtillement. Et dessus sont les
within and worked very subtly And above are the
canes envernissies si bien et si fort que nulle eaue ne
canes varnished so well and so strongly that any water not
les puet pourir. Ces canes sont grosse bien trois paumes,
them can rot These canes are thick fully three palms

et longues de dix ou de quinze, et se taillent de un
and long of ten or of fifteen and themselves cut from one
nou à autre de travers. Et de ces copons est fait celui
knot to other of across And from these pieces is made that
palais. Et si fait mains autres services aussi; car il en
palace And so it-does many other services also for they therewith
cueuvrent maisons, et s'en fait on assez d'autres labours.
cover houses and so-thereof makes one plenty of-other works
Et [est] si ordené que il se deffait et fait moult tost; et
And it-is so ordered that it itself unmakes and makes very quickly and
se metent tout par pieces, et le porte l'en legierement
themselves put all in pieces and it carries one lightly
là où le seigneur commande. Quant il est tendus, plus de
there where the lord commands When it is pitched more than
deux cents cordes, toutes de soie, le soustienent, et demeure
two hundred cords all of silk it sustain and dwells
laiens en ceste praerie, le seigneur, aucune fois au palais
in-there in this meadow the lord some time at-the palace
de marbre, et aucune fois à cestui de canes, trois mois de
of marble and some time at this-one of canes three months of
l'an: c'est juing, et juignet et aoust. Et y demoure ces
the-year this-is June and July and August And there he-dwells these
trois mois pour ce que il n'y a pas trop chaut; ains est
three months for this that it not-there is at-all too hot but is
moult frois. Et quant vient au .xxviije. jour d'aoust, si
very cool And when comes to-the twenty-eighth day of-August so
se part; et vous dirai pourquoy il se part chascun
himself he-departs and to-you I-will-tell why he himself departs each
an de cest palais as .xxviije. jours d'aoust. Car sachiez
year from this palace at-the twenty-eighth days of-August For know
que il fait tenir un moult grant aharas de jumens toutes
that he has kept a very great stud of mares all

blanches, sans nulles autres taches, qui sont plus de dix
white without any other spots which are more than ten
mille jumens toutes blanches. Et le lait de ces jumens boit
thousand mares all white And the milk of these mares drinks
il, et touz ceus de son lignage, et non nul autre, sauve
he and all those of his lineage and not any other save
ce que il y a bien une generation, si comme un grant
this that it there is fully a generation so as a great
lignage, qui le boivent aussi. Et ce orent il par ce que
lineage who it drink also And this had they by this that
leur donna Chinguis Kaan pour une victoire que il orent
to-them gave Genghis Khan for a victory which they had
avec lui jadis. Et se appellent, ces lignages, Horiad.
with him formerly And themselves call these lineages Horiad

Quant ces jumens donc passent par le pais, et aucuns
When these mares then pass through the country and some
grans seigneurs les treuve, comment grans que il soit, si
great lords them find however great that he be so
n'ose passer jusques à tant qu'elles soient passées; ou,
not-dares pass until to such-time that-they be passed or
se non, il se destourne de son chemin, et vait par une
if not he himself turns-aside from his road and goes by an
autre part, bien demie journée, si que nus ne les ose
other part fully half day-journey so that anyone not them dares
approchier, mais leur convient faire moult grant honneur.
approach but to-them it-behooves do very great honor
Et quant le seigneur est partis de celui lieu au .xxviije.
And when the lord is departed from that place at-the twenty-eighth
jour d'aoust, si comme je vous ai dit, si prent on tout le
day of-August so as I to-you have said so takes one all the
lait de ces jumens, et le vont jetant par terre. Et ce font
milk of these mares and it go throwing on ground And this do

il, pour ce que leur astrenomiens et leur ydolastres dient
they for this that their astrologers and their idolaters say
que il est moult bon que de celui lait soit jeté chascun an
that it is very good that of that milk be thrown each year
au .xxviije. jour d'aoust, par la terre, à ce que la terre
at-the twenty-eighth day of-August through the earth to this that the earth
et l'air et leur idles en puissent avoir leur part, et les
and the-air and their idols thereof may have their part and the
espriz qui vont par l'air et par terre. Si que il puissent
spirits which go through the-air and through earth So that they may
sauver lui et ses enfans et ses fames et ses biens, et touz
save him and his children and his wives and his goods and all
ceus de son pais; et bestes et chevaus et blés et toutes
those of his country and beasts and horses and grains and all
autres choses. Puis se part le seigneur et s'en vait.
other things Then himself departs the lord and himself-thence goes

Mais je vous dirai avant une merveille que je vous
But I to-you will-tell first a marvel which I to-you
avoie oubliée à conter. Car sachiez que quant le seigneur
had forgotten to tell For know that when the lord
demeure en celui lieu trois moys de l'an chascun an,
dwells in that place three months of the-year each year
et il fait aucune fois mauvais temps, il a avec lui ses
and it makes some time bad weather he has with him his
sages enchanteurs et astronomiens qui sevent tant de
wise enchanters and astrologers who know so-much of
l'art dyabolique que nigromencie, que il font, tant comme
the-art diabolic and necromancy that they make as-far as
contient le palais du seigneur, n'y a nulle nue, ne nul
contains the palace of-the lord not-there is any cloud nor any
mauvais temps dessus. Ces hommes sages, qui ce font, sont
bad weather above These men wise who this do are

appellez Tebet et Quesimur; car il sont de deux generations
called Tibet and Kashmir for they are of two generations
de gens, et sont ydolastres. Car tout quanque il font, si
of people and are idolaters For all whatever they do so
est par oeuvre de dyable; et font croire à lis autres gens
is by work of devil and make believe to the other people
que il le font pour leur saintée et par oeuvre de Dieu. Et
that they it do for their holiness and by work of God And
si ont un tel usage comme je vous dirai. Car quant un
so they-have a such usage as I to-you will-tell For when a
homme est jugiez à mort, et soit mort de la seigneurie,
man is judged to death and be killed by the lordship
il le prennent et le font cuire et le menjuent. Mais
they him take and him make cook and him eat But
se il morut de sa mort, si ne le menjeroient pas.
if he died of his death so not him they-would-eat at-all

Encor font, ces deux manieres de gens que je vous ai dit,
Further make these two manners of people which I to-you have said
un autre tel merveille: car quant le grant Kaan siet en sa
an other such marvel for when the great Khan sits in his
maistre cité, en son grant palais, sur la table qui est haut plus
master city in his great palace at the table which is high more
.viij. coutes, il a devant lui, enmi les sales, ses copes, loins
eight cubits there is before him amid the halls his cups far
de lui bien dix pas, plaines de vins ou d'autres bons buvrages
from him fully ten paces full of wines or of-other good drinks
d'espices à leur usages. Ces enchanteours, que je vous ai dit,
of-spices at their usages These enchanters whom I to-you have said
font tant par leur enchantemens que quant le seigneur a
do so-much by their enchantments that when the lord has
talent de boivre, les copes que je vous ai dit, se lievent
desire of drinking the cups which I to-you have said themselves raise

de leur lieu, sans ce que nuls les touche, et s'en
from their place without this that anyone them touch and themselves-thence
vont devant le seigneur. Et ce puet veoir chascuns qui est là,
go before the lord And this can see each who is there
qui sont plus de dix mille personnes. Et ce est voirs sans
who are more than ten thousand persons And this is true without
nulle mensonge, car bien le vous diront, les sages de nostre
any lie for well it to-you will-tell the wise of our
pais, qui sevent de nigromance, que il se puet bien faire.
country who know of necromancy that it itself can well do

Et quant vient les festes de leur ydoles, ces enchanteours
And when come the feasts of their idols these enchanters
s'en vont au seigneur et li dient: «Sire, tel
themselves-thence go to-the lord and to-him say Lord such
feste vient de tel notre ydole, et nomment son nom. —
feast comes of such our idol and they-name its name
Monseigneur, vous savez, dient cil enchanteeur, que cest
My-lord you know say those enchanters that this
ydole fait faire mauvais temps et damages de noz choses,
idol makes make bad weather and damages of our things
quant elle n'a offrandes. Si que, pour ce, nous vous prions
when it not-has offerings So that for this we you pray
que vous faites donner tant de moutons qui aient les
that you have given so-many of sheep which have the
chiefs noirs, et en dient la quantité qu'il leur plaist. Et
heads black and thereof they-say the quantity that-it them pleases And
voulons aussi, beau Sire, avoir tant d'encens, de lingnaloel,
we-wish also fair Lord to-have so-much of-incense of aloe-wood
et tant de tel chose, et tant d'autre tel chose (si
and so-much of such thing and so-much of-other such thing so
comme bon leur semblera à leur volenté), à ce que nous
as good to-them will-seem at their will to this that we

puissons faire grant honneur et grans sacrefices à nos idles.
may make great honor and great sacrifices to our idols
Si que elles nous puissent sauver et nos choses toutes».
So that they us may save and our things all

Et le seigneur commande à ses baillis qui entour li sont,
And the lord commands to his bailiffs who around him are
qu'il leur soit tout donné à leur plaisir. Quant il ont eu
that-it to-them be all given at their pleasure When they have had
ce qu'il demandent, si en font à leur ydoles moult
that which-they ask so thereof they-make to their idols very
grant feste, et grant honneur, avec moult grant luminaires
great feast and great honor with very great lights
et avec grans encens de pluseurs oudeurs que il font de
and with great incense of several odors which they make of
maintes manieres d'espices. Et puis font cuire la char et
many manners of-spices And then they-make cook the meat and
la mettent devant les idles; et vont espandant du bruel çà
it put before the idols and go spilling of-the broth here
et là, et dient que leur idles en prennent tant comme
and there and say that their idols thereof take as-much as
il veulent. Et en ceste maniere font leur festes. Car
they wish And in this manner they-make their feasts For
sachiez que chascune de leur ydoles a son nom, et jour de
know that each of their idols has its name and day of
sa feste, si comme nous avons de nos sains par chascun an.
its feast so as we have of our saints through each year

Et font grandismes monstiers et abbaies, qui sont si
And they-make very-great minsters and abbeys which are so
granz comme une petite cité, et avec plus de deux mille
great as a little city and with more than two thousand
moines, selonc leur coustume. Et se vestent plus
monks according-to their custom And themselves they-dress more

honnestement que les autres genz; car il portent le chief et
honestly than the other people for they wear the head and
la barbe rese. Et ont entre eus de telz qui puet prendre
the beard shaven And they-have among them of such who can take
moullier et en ont enfans assez. Encore ont une autre
wife and thereof have children plenty Further they-have an other
maniere de religious que il appellent Sensin, lesquelz sont
manner of religious whom they call Sensin who are
hommes de moult grant abstinence selonc leur coustumes;
men of very great abstinence according-to their customs
et mainent si aspre vie comme je vous dirai. Car il ne
and lead so harsh life as I to-you will-tell For they not
menjuent en toute leur vie, autre chose que bran, et le
eat in all their life other thing than bran and it
metent en yaue chaude et le menjuent. Et ce est leur
put in water hot and it eat And this is their
viande; car jamais ne menjeront autre viande que bran; et
food for ever-more not they-will-eat other food than bran and
boivent l'yaue et jeunent touzjours; si que ce est moult
drink the-water and fast always so that this is very
aspre vie desmesuréement. Il ont grans ydoles et assez.
harsh life beyond-measure They have great idols and plenty
Mais aucune fois aourent le feu. Et les autres idles, qui ne
But some time they-worship the fire And the other idolaters who not
sont de ceste regle, dient que ceuls sont si comme patarins
are of this rule say that these are so as heretics
pour ce qu'il n'aourent pas les ydoles en la maniere d'euls.
for this that-they not-worship at-all the idols in the manner of-them
Car ceus ne prendroient moullier pour riens du monde. Il
For these not would-take wife for anything of-the world They
vestent vestement noirs et blons, et dorment sus nates; et
wear garments black and blue and sleep upon mats and

font si aspre vie que c'est merveilles. Leur ydoles sont toutes
lead so harsh life that it-is marvels Their idols are all
femmes; c'est por ce que leur noms sont touz noms femenins.
women this-is for this that their names are all names feminine

Or laisserons de ce, et vous conterons des grans faiz
Now we-will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of-the great deeds
et des merveilles du grant seigneur des seigneurs. Ce
and of-the marvels of-the great lord of-the lords This
est le grant seigneur qui est seigneur des Tatars, lequel
is the great lord who is lord of-the Tartars who
est appelez Cublay, tres noble seigneur et puissant.
is called Kublai very noble lord and powerful

XXXI · KUBLAI KHAN AND NAYAN'S TREASON

The book now turns to the great deeds of Kublai Khan, lord of lords, the most powerful man who has ever lived. Of the line of Genghis, he took the lordship by right and by prowess in 1256 and has reigned forty-two years, and he went to war in person only once, in 1286. His young uncle Nayan, lord of many lands and provinces and of three hundred thousand horsemen, resolved to take the empire from him and sent word to Kaidu, the Khan's nephew and a rebel, to attack from the other side; Kaidu readied a hundred thousand horsemen.

Ci devise des granz faiz du grant Kaan qui orendroit 75
Here describes of-the great deeds of-the great Khan who now
regne, qui Cublay Kaan est appellez; et deviserai de touz
reigns who Kublai Khan is called and I-will-describe of all
les granz faiz de sa court, et comment il maintient ses
the great deeds of his court and how he maintains his
terres et ses genz en justice.
lands and his people in justice

Or vous vueil commencier à conter en ce notre livre
Now to-you I-wish to-begin to tell in this our book
touz les grans faiz et toutes les grans merveilles du grant
all the great deeds and all the great marvels of-the great
Kaan qui ore regne, qui Cublay Kaan est appellez, qui
Khan who now reigns who Kublai Khan is called which
vaut à dire en notre language: «le grant seigneur des
is-worth to say in our language the great lord of-the
seigneurs empereour». Et certes il a bien ce nom à droit,
lords emperor And certainly he has well this name by right
pour ce que chascun sache, par certain en verité, que c'est
for this that each may-know by certain in truth that this-is
le plus puissant homme de gens et de terres et de tresors
the most powerful man of people and of lands and of treasures

qui onques fust ou monde, ne qui orendroit soit, du
who ever was in-the world nor who now be from-the
temps de Adam, notre premier pere, jusques aujourd'ui. Et
time of Adam our first father until today And
ce vous monstrerai tout appertement en ce notre livre que
this to-you I-will-show all openly in this our book that
c'est voirs ce que je vous ai dit; et que chascun y sera
it-is true that which I to-you have said and that each there will-be
contens comment il est le greigneur sires qui onques au
content how he is the greatest lord who ever in-the
mondes fust ne ore soit. Et veez ci la raison comment.
world was nor now be And see here the reason how

76 Ci devise de la grant bataille que fist le grant Kaan
Here describes of the great battle which made the great Khan
contre Naian son oncle, pour entrer en seigneurie si comme
against Nayan his uncle for to-enter into lordship so as
il devoit.
he ought

Il est voirs que ce Cublay Kaan est de la droite lignie
It is true that this Kublai Khan is of the right line
emperial de Chinguis Kaan, le premier seigneur de tous les
imperial of Genghis Khan the first lord of all the
Tatars du monde. Et c'est li siesime seigneur si comme je
Tartars of-the world And this-is the sixth lord so as I
vous ai conté ça en arriere en ce livre. Et ot la seigneurie
to-you have told here in back in this book And he-had the lordship
à .m.cc.lvi, (1256) ans de Crist; car en celui an
at a-thousand-two-hundred-fifty-six 1256 years of Christ for in that year
commença à regner, et ot la seigneurie par son sens et
he-began to reign and had the lordship by his sense and
par sa proesce et par sa grant valour, si comme droiz et
by his prowess and by his great worth so as right and

raisons estoit; car ses frères et ses parens li deffendoient;
reason was for his brothers and his kin him forbade-it
mais il, pour sa grant prouesce, l'ot. Et pour ce que par
but he for his great prowess it-had And for this that by
droit et par raison il la devoit avoir, si comme droiz hoirs
right and by reason he it ought to-have so as right heir
de emperial ligniee de quoi il ot la seigneurie, et a regné
of imperial line from which he had the lordship and has reigned
quarante deux ans jusques à ore, que court mil deus
forty two years until to now that runs a-thousand two
cent quatre vingt dix et huit [du jour de Crist] que il
hundred four score ten and eight of-the day of Christ that he
commença. Et puet avoir d'aage bien entour quatre vingt cinq
began And he-can have of-age fully about four score five
ans; si que il povoit avoir d'aage quant il entra en son siege
years so that he could have of-age when he entered into his seat
entour quarante trois ans, avant que il fust seigneur. Il aloit
about forty three years before that he were lord He went
en l'ost, avant, pluseurs fois et estoit proudome d'armes et
into the-host before several times and was worthy-man of-arms and
moult bons chevetaines. Mais puis que il fu seigneur, il n'ala
very good captain But since that he was lord he not-went
en ost que une fois. Et ce temps fu .m.cc.lxxx.vi.
on host but one time And this time was a-thousand-two-hundred-eighty-six
(1286) de Crist; et vous dirai pour quoy il y fu.
1286 of Christ and to-you I-will-tell for what he there was

Il estoit un grant sire tatars qui avoit nom Naian, et
There was a great lord Tartar who had name Nayan and
estoit oncle audit seigneur Cublay Kaan; et estoit joenne
was uncle to-the-said lord Kublai Khan and was young
homme, seigneur de maintes terres et de maintes provinces.
man lord of many lands and of many provinces

Si que quant il se vit seigneur si s'en orgueilli
So that when he himself saw lord so himself-thereof he-grew-proud
pour son jouvent et pour ce qu'il avoit grant seignourie;
for his youth and for this that-he had great lordship
car il povoit bien mener à bataille .ccc. mille hommes
for he could well lead to battle three-hundred thousand men
à cheval. Mais toutes fois il estoit homme de son nevo
on horse But all times he was man of his nephew
le grant Kaan, qui Cublay a nom, et le devoit estre par
the great Khan who Kublai has name and it ought to-be by
raison. Mais quant il se vit de si grant povoir, si se
reason But when he himself saw of so great power so himself
pensa qu'il ne vouloit plus estre homs au grant Kaan;
he-thought that-he not wished more to-be man to-the great Khan
ainçois lui vouloit tollir sa seigneurie, se il onques
but from-him wished to-take-away his lordship if he ever
povoit. Si manda ce Naiam, par ses messages, à un autre
could So sent-word this Nayan by his envoys to an other
seigneur Tatar, qui se nommoit Caidu, qui estoit grant
lord Tartar who himself named Kaidu who was great
sires et puissans et estoit neveus au grant Kaan; et estoit
lord and powerful and was nephew to-the great Khan and was
parent à Naian, et estoit homme au grant Kaan. Mais il
kin to Nayan and was man to-the great Khan But he
estoit reveles et vouloit grant mal à son seigneur, le grant
was rebel and wished great harm to his lord the great
Kaan, qui son oncle estoit. Et li manda, disant ces
Khan who his uncle was And to-him he-sent-word saying these
paroles: que il s'appareilleroit atout son povoir, qui estoit
words that he would-make-himself-ready with-all his power which was
moult grant, d'aler seur le grant Kaan son seigneur; et que
very great of-going upon the great Khan his lord and that

il li prioit qu'il en feist aussi son povoir et entrer
he him begged that-he thereof should-do also his power and enter
seur le grant Kaan, d'autre part, afin que quant il li
upon the great Khan from-other part to-the-end that when they him
iroient sus à si grant gent, l'un d'une part, et l'autre
would-go upon with so great people the-one from-one part and the-other
d'autre, qu'il lui peussent tollir sa seigneurie par force.
from-other that-they from-him might take-away his lordship by force

Et Caydu, quant il ot entendu ceste nouvele que Naian li
And Kaidu when he had heard this news which Nayan to-him
mandoit, si en fu moult liez, et bien pensa que ore estoit
sent-word so thereof was very glad and well thought that now was
temps d'avoir son entendement. Si li manda respondant
time of-having his intent So to-him he-sent-word answering
que ainssi feroit il. Si s'appareilla atout son povoir, tant
that thus would-do he So himself-he-made-ready with-all his power so
que bien ot .c.m. (100,000) hommes à cheval.
that fully he-had a-hundred-thousand 100,000 men on horse

Or retornons au grant Kaan qui toute ceste traison sot.
Now let-us-return to-the great Khan who all this treason knew

The Khan gathers three hundred and sixty thousand horsemen and a hundred thousand foot in secret, all from those near him, and his astrologers promise victory. After twenty days he surprises Nayan, who is asleep in his tent with his wife. The Khan watches from a wooden tower on four elephants, his men ranked by thirty thousand, and when the great kettledrum sounds the battle begins, with arrows falling like rain. It lasts until noon; Nayan's host breaks, and Nayan, a baptized Christian with the cross on his banner, is taken.

77 Comment le grant Kaan ala contre Naian.

How the great Khan went against Nayan

Et quant le grant Kaan sot ce, si s'appareilla moult

And when the great Khan knew this so himself-made-ready very

vaillammant comme celui qui ne les doubta pas pour ce que

valiantly as one who not them feared at-all for this that

il faisoient contre raison. Car il ne fu de riens esbahis, par

they did against reason For he not was of anything astonished by

son grant sens et par sa proesce. Et dist que il ne porteroit

his great sense and by his prowess And he-said that he not would-wear

jamais coronne se il ne metoit à male mort ces deux

ever crown if he not put to evil death these two

seigneurs Tatars qui sont traitres et desloial contre lui. Et

lords Tartars who are traitors and disloyal against him And

fist son appareil moult tost et coiement que nus n'en

he-made his equipment very quickly and quietly so-that anyone not-thereof

sot riens, en dix ou en douze jours, autres que son privé

knew anything in ten or in twelve days others than his privy

Conseil. Et ot assemblé bien trois cent soixante mille

Council And he-had assembled fully three hundred sixty thousand

hommes à cheval et bien cent mille à pié. Il assembla si

men on horse and fully hundred thousand on foot He assembled so

pou de gent, pour ce estoient de ces osts qui li estoient
few of people for this they-were of these hosts who to-him were
entour; car des autres osts qui estoient si loings, il ne les
around for of-the other hosts which were so far he not them
pot pas avoir si tost, qui estoient genz sans nombre et
could at-all have so quickly which were people without number and
sans fin, qui estoient alé en diverses contrées et provinces
without end who were gone into diverse countries and provinces
pour conquester terres par son commandement. Car s'il eust
for to-conquer lands by his command For if-he had
mandé tout son effors, il en eust assemblé si grant
summoned all his force he thereof would-have assembled so great
multitude que ce seroit impossible chose à croire, ne à ouir,
multitude that this would-be impossible thing to believe nor to hear
ne à dire; que ce seroit nombre sans fin. Car ces trois
nor to say for this would-be number without end For these three
cent soixante mille hommes à cheval que il fist assembler
hundred sixty thousand men on horse whom he had assembled
furent ses fauconniers et braconniers qui li sont entour.
were his falconers and huntsmen who to-him are around

Et quant il ot appareillié si pou de gent, si fist veoir
And when he had made-ready so few of people so he-had see
à ses astronomiens se il vaincra la bataille, et se il vendra
by his astrologers if he will-win the battle and if he will-come
à chief de ses enemis. Cil regarderent par leur art et li
to end of his enemies They looked by their art and to-him
distrent que il alast hardiement, car il vaincroit et auroit
said that he should-go boldly for he would-win and would-have
l'onneur et la victoire; de quoy il fut moult joiaus. Et se
the-honor and the victory of which he was very joyful And himself
mist à la voie avec son ost; et chevauchierent vingt journées
he-put to the way with his host and they-rode twenty day-journeys

tant que il furent venu en un grant champ là où estoit
until that they were come into a great field there where was
Naian avec tout son ost, qui bien estoient quatre cent mille
Nayan with all his host who fully were four hundred thousand
hommes à cheval. Et vindrent les genz du grant Kaan si
men on horse And came the people of-the great Khan so
matinet et si soubitement que ceus n'en sorent riens. Car
early and so suddenly that those not-thereof knew anything For
le grant Kaan avoit fait si garder les voies pour les espies que
the great Khan had had so guarded the ways for the spies that
nuls n'y povoit aler ne venir qui ne fust pris. Et ce fu
anyone not-there could go nor come who not were taken And this was
l'achoison par quoi Naian ne sot riens de sa venue, de quoy
the-occasion by which Nayan not knew anything of his coming of which
il demourerent moult esbahiz, et sourpris. Et vous di que
they remained very astonished and surprised And to-you I-tell that
quant l'ost du grant Kaan joinst à, Naian estoit en sa
when the-host of-the great Khan joined thereto Nayan was in his
tente avec sa fame en son lit et se dormoit. Et ce fu pour
tent with his wife in his bed and himself slept And this was for
ce que le seigneur fist le sien ost moult privéement et tost,
this that the lord made the his host very privily and quickly
si comme je vous ai dit; il se soulaçoit avec sa femme
so as I to-you have said he himself solaced with his wife
ou lit, car il lui vouloit moult grant bien à desmesure.
in-the bed for he her wished very great good beyond measure

Ci commence de la bataille au grant Kaan à Nayan 78
Here begins of the battle of-the great Khan with Nayan
le traitre.
the traitor

Et que vous en diroie je? Quant il fu bien jours le Kaan
And what you thereof would-tell I When it was well day the Khan
avec tout son ost fu sus un tertre ou plain là où Naian
with all his host was upon a hillock on-the plain there where Nayan
estoit en ses tentes qui demouroient moult seurement comme
was in his tents who dwelt very securely as
ceus qui ne creoient pour riens du monde que illec venist
those who not believed for anything of-the world that there should-come
nulle gent à faire leur domage. Et ce estoit la choison
any people to do their damage And this was the cause
pourquoy il estoient en si grant seurté, et ne faisoient garde
wherefore they were in so great security and not kept watch
nisune; car il n'avoient onques sceu rien de la venue du
any for they not-had ever known anything of the coming of-the
grant Kaan, si comme je vous ai dit, pour ce que touz les
great Khan so as I to-you have said for this that all the
pas estoient gardez. Et aussi que il estoient moult loins en
passes were guarded And also that they were very far in
lieux sauvages, que plus y avoit de trente journées jusques
places wild for more there was than thirty day-journeys until
au grant Kaan; mais il les chevaucha en vingt avec tout
to-the great Khan but he them rode in twenty with all
son ost pour la grant volenté que il avoit d'encontrer le.
his host for the great will which he had of-meeting him

Or que vous diroie je? Le grant Kaan fu sus le tertre et
Now what you would-tell I The great Khan was upon the hillock and
fist faire une grant bretesche, sus quatre olifans moult bien
had made a great wooden-tower upon four elephants very well

ordenez, et estoit de lez s'enseigne qui estoit si haute que
ordered and was at side his-standard which was so high that
bien povoit estre veue de toutes pars. Ses gens estoient tous
well could be seen from all parts His people were all
eschiellés de .xxx.m. (30,000); et avoit la plus grant partie
ranked by thirty-thousand 30,000 and had the most great part
de ceus à cheval ainsi eschelé: un homme à pié derriere la
of those on horse thus ranked a man on foot behind the
croupe de sa beste, qui tenoit une lance; car ainsi estoient
croup of his beast who held a lance for thus were
ordonné toute la gent à pié avec lances en ceste maniere; si
ordered all the people on foot with lances in this manner so
que tout le champ en estoit couvert. Si que en ceste maniere
that all the field thereof was covered So that in this manner
estoit appareillié l'ost du grant Kaan pour combattre.
was made-ready the-host of-the great Khan for to-fight

Et quant Naian vit ce, si coururent tuit as armes
And when Nayan saw this so ran all to-the arms
moult esbahis; et s'appareillierent moult bien et firent leur
very astonished and themselves-made-ready very well and made their
eschelés ordenéement. Endementres que il estoient tuit
ranks orderly Meanwhile that they were all
appareillié l'une part et l'autre de bataille, si comme je
made-ready the-one part and the-other for battle so as I
vous ai dit, que il ne manoit que du férir: adonc puet
to-you have said that there not remained but the striking then could
l'en oïr sonner mains instrumens de pluseurs manieres, et
one hear sound many instruments of several manners and
chanter touz à haute voiz; car l'usage des Tatars est si
sing all with high voice for the-usage of-the Tartars is so
faite que, avant qu'il entrent en bataille, chascuns chante
made that before that-they enter into battle each sings

et sonne un leur estrument à deux cordes moult plesant
and sounds a their instrument with two strings very pleasant
à ouïr. Et demourent ainssi escellé chantant, et sonnant
to hear And they-remain thus ranked singing and sounding
moult bien, jusques à tant que le grant nacaire du
very well until to such-time that the great kettledrum of-the
seigneur sonne. Et maintenant qu'elle commence à sonner, si
lord sounds And at-once that-it begins to sound so
commence la bataille d'une part et d'autre de chascun; car,
begins the battle on-one part and on-other on each for
autrement, devant le son du grant nacaire du seigneur
otherwise before the sound of-the great kettledrum of-the lord
nulz n'oseroit commencier la bataille, si qu'en chantant
anyone not-would-dare begin the battle so that-in singing
et sonnant, quant il furent tuit eschellé et appareillié si
and sounding when they were all ranked and made-ready so
commencierent à sonner le grant nacaire du grant Kaan. Et
they-began to sound the great kettledrum of-the great Khan And
l'autre de Naian commença aussi à sonner. Et des maintenant
the-other of Nayan began also to sound And from at-once
commença la bataille à sonner d'une part et d'autre moult
began the battle to sound on-one part and on-other very
forment. Et se coururent sus aus arcs et aus
greatly And themselves they-ran upon with-the bows and with-the
maces et as lances et as espées, et as arbalestes
maces and with-the lances and with-the swords and with-the crossbows
que hommes à pié ont, si felonnessement que c'estoit une
which men on foot have so fiercely that it-was a
merveille à veoir. Or peust l'en veoir voler saiettes d'une
marvel to see Now could one see fly arrows from-one
part et d'autre tant que tuit l'air en estoit couvert,
part and from-other so-much that all the-air thereof was covered

si comme pluie espessement. Or peust l'en veoir chevaliers
so as rain thickly Now could one see knights
espessement et sergens à cheval cheoir mors d'une part et
thickly and sergeants on horse fall dead from-one part and
d'autre moult grandement, si que toute la terre en estoit
from-other very greatly so that all the earth thereof was
couverte. Il y avoit si grant cri d'une part et d'autre
covered It there was so great cry from-one part and from-other
à moult grant planté de mors et de navrés que l'en
with very great plenty of dead and of wounded that one
ne peust pas ouïr dieu tonnant! Car la bataille fu moult
not could at-all hear god thundering For the battle was very
aspre et felonnesse et ne s'espargnoient de riens à occire.
harsh and fierce and not themselves-spared in anything at killing
Ore que vous feroie je lonc compte? Sachiez que ce fu
Now why you would-make I long tale Know that this was
la plus perilleuse bataille et la plus douteuse et la plus aspre
the most perilous battle and the most doubtful and the most harsh
qui onques fust veue à notre temps, ne ne fu veu en champ
which ever was seen in our time nor not was seen in field
tant de genz d'armes à un coup, pour bataille faire ensemble
so-many of people of-arms at one blow for battle to-do together
comme ceus firent; et proprement genz à cheval; car bien
as those did and especially people on horse for well
furent d'une part et d'autre plus de .vii.c.lx.m.
were from-one part and from-other more than seven-hundred-sixty-thousand
(760,000) hommes à cheval, qui fu moult grant fais sans les
760,000 men on horse which was very great mass without the
genz à pié qui furent un moult grand nombre. Celle bataille
people on foot who were a very great number That battle
dura melléement d'une part et d'autre du matin jusques
lasted in-melee on-one part and on-other from-the morning until

enmi jour. Mais au derrain si comme il plot à Dieu et
mid day But at-the last so as it pleased to God and
à la raison que le grant Kaan ot la victoire, et perdi la
to the reason that the great Khan had the victory and lost the
bataille, Naian, et fu desconfit; si que quant l'ost Naian vit
battle Nayan and was defeated so that when the-host (of-)Nayan saw
la grant force d'armes que fesoient la gent au grant Kaan,
the great force of-arms which made the people of-the great Khan
si ne les porent souffrir; ains se mistrent à la fuie.
so not them they-could withstand but themselves they-put to the flight
Mais à Naian ne valut riens; car il fu pris et tuit li baron,
But to Nayan not availed anything for he was taken and all the barons
qui avec lui estoient, qui se rendirent au grant Kaan
who with him were who themselves rendered to-the great Khan
avec toutes leur armes. Et sachies que Naian estoit crestiens
with all their arms And know that Nayan was Christian
baptisiez et portoit en son enseigne la croiz, mais il ne
baptized and bore on his standard the cross but it not
li valut riens pour ce qu'il aloit contre son seigneur à
to-him availed anything for this that-he went against his lord with
grant tort; car il estoit homme au grant Kaan, et devoit
great wrong for he was man to-the great Khan and ought
tenir la terre de lui, si comme tuit si ancestre avoient esté.
to-hold the land from him so as all his ancestors had been

Nayan is wrapped in a carpet and tossed until he dies, so that no imperial blood touches earth, air, or sun, and his four provinces swear fealty again. When the unbelievers mock the Christians that the cross did not help Nayan, the Khan rebukes them: the cross did well not to help a traitor against his lord. Kaidu gives up his plans. The Khan rewards his barons with higher commands and tablets: silver for a hundred men, gold for a thousand, a lion's head for ten thousand, and for the greatest a canopy and a silver chair.

79 Comment le grant Kaan fist occire Nayan.

How the great Khan had killed Nayan

Et quant le grant Kaan sot que Nayan estoit pris, si en

And when the great Khan knew that Nayan was taken so thereof

fu moult liez, et commanda que il fust mis à mort dès

was very glad and commanded that he were put to death from

maintenant; que nus ne le veist, à ce, que pour ce que il

at-once so-that anyone not him should-see to this that for this that he

estoit de sa char et de son sanc, il en eust pitié et li

was of his flesh and of his blood he thereof should-have pity and him

pardonnast. Et fu occis en ceste maniere: car il fu envelopez

should-pardon And he-was killed in this manner for he was wrapped

en un tapis et fu tant menez çà et là estroitement que

in a carpet and was so-much tossed here and there tightly that

il morut. Et pour ce le fist morir en ceste maniere, pour

he died And for this him he-had die in this manner for

ce que il ne vouloit que le sanc du lignage de son empire

this that he not wished that the blood of-the lineage of his empire

fust espandus ne en l'air, ne en la terre, ne au soleil.

were spilled nor in the-air nor on the earth nor in-the sun

Et quant le grant Kaan ot vaincu ceste bataille si
And when the great Khan had won this battle so
comme vous avez ouy, touz les barons et les hommes des
as you have heard all the barons and the men of-the
provinces Nayan firent de rechief la fiance au grant Kaan,
provinces (of-)Nayan made of anew the fealty to-the great Khan
qui furent de quatre provinces, si comme je vous dirai, qui
who were of four provinces so as I to-you will-tell which
avoient esté de la seigneurie dudit Nayan. La premiere
had been of the lordship of-the-said Nayan The first
a nom Ciorcia; la seconde Cauly; la tierce Brascol, la
has name Chorcha the second Kauli the third Barskol the
quarte Sichuigui. Et de toutes ces quatre grans provinces
fourth Sikintinju And of all these four great provinces
en estoit, Nayan, seigneur, qui moult estoit grant chose.
thereof was Nayan lord which very was great thing

Et après que le grant Kaan ot vaincu Nayan si comme
And after that the great Khan had defeated Nayan so as
vous avez ouy, les generations des genz qui estoient en la
you have heard the generations of-the people who were in the
seigneurie Nayan en ces quatre provinces avant dites, qui
lordship (of-)Nayan in these four provinces before said who
estoient ydolastre et sarrazin; mais auques y avoit crestiens;
were idolaters and Saracens but somewhat there were Christians
[il faisoient si grans gap des crestiens], et de la croix
they made so great mockery of-the Christians and of the cross
que Nayan y avoit portée en s'enseigne que il ne povoient
which Nayan there had borne on his-standard that they not could
durer. Et leur disoient: «Or veez comment la vostre
endure And to-them they-said Now see how the your
croix de vostre dieu a aidie Nayan qui estoit crestiens et
cross of your god has aided Nayan who was Christian and

l'aouroit.» Et tant en crut la parole, qu'elle vint jusques
it-worshiped And so-much thereof grew the word that-it came as-far-as
au grant Kaan. Et quant le grant Kaan oy ce, si reprist
to-the great Khan And when the great Khan heard this so he-rebuked
moult ceus qui le gap en faisoient et devant les crestiens.
much those who the mockery thereof made and before the Christians
Et dist aux crestiens «que il se deussent conforter;
And he-said to-the Christians that they themselves should comfort
que se la croix n'avoit aidé Nayan que elle avoit fait
that if the cross not-had aided Nayan that it had done
grant raison; car, bonne chose si comme elle est, ne devoit
great reason for good thing so as it is not ought
autre chose faire que ce qu'elle avoit fait; car Nayan estoit
other thing to-do than that which-it had done for Nayan was
desloiaus et traitres qui venoit contre son seigneur; et pour
disloyal and traitor who came against his lord and for
ce li est bien avenu ce qu'il avoit deservi. Et la croix
this to-him is well befallen that which-he had deserved And the cross
de vostre dieu fist moult bien quant elle ne l'aida contre
of your god did very well when it not him-aided against
droit.» Et dist ce si haut que chascun l'oy; si que les
right And he-said this so loud that each it-heard so that the
crestiens respondirent au grant Kaan: «Grandisme seigneur,
Christians answered to-the great Khan Very-great lord
vous dites moult bien, car nostre croix ne veut aidier nulluy
you say very well for our cross not wishes to-aid anyone
à tort; et pour ce n'aida pas Nayan qui faisoit maus et
with wrong and for this not-aided at-all Nayan who did evils and
desloiautez, si qu'elle n'en veult faire si comme lui qui
disloyalties so that-it not-thereof wishes to-do so as he who
mal faisoit.» Si que depuis ne leur fu faite nulle repreuche
evil did So that since not to-them was made any reproach

des mécréans, pour ce qu'il oïrent bien les paroles qui
by-the misbelievers for this that-they heard well the words which
furent dites du seigneur aux crestiens pour la croix que
were said by-the lord to-the Christians for the cross which
Nayan avoit portée en s'enseigne et ne li avoit pas aidé.
Nayan had borne on his-standard and not him had at-all aided

Comment le grant Kaan s'en retourna à la cité de Cambaluc. 80

How the great Khan himself-thence returned to the city of Khanbaliq

Et quant le grant Kaan ot vaincu Nayan en tel maniere
And when the great Khan had defeated Nayan in such manner
comme vous avez ouy; si s'en retourna à la maistre
as you have heard so himself-thence he-returned to the master
cité de Cambaluc. Et illec demoura à grant soulas et à
city of Khanbaliq And there he-dwelt in great solace and in
grant feste. Et l'autre seigneur Tatar, qui Caydu avoit à
great feast And the-other lord Tartar who Kaidu had as
nom, quant il sot que Nayan fu desconfit et mort, si en
name when he knew that Nayan was defeated and dead so thereof
ot moult grant douleur, et demoura de son appareil; mais
had very great sorrow and desisted from his equipment but
il ot doute d'estre ainsi menez comme Nayan avoit esté.
he had fear of-being thus led as Nayan had been

Or avez entendu comment le grant Kaan n'ala onques
Now you-have heard how the great Khan not-went ever
en ost que une seule fois, et ce fu ceste; car en touz
on host but one single time and this was this-one for in all
ses autres besoins et osts il envoie ses filz ou ses barons.
his other needs and hosts he sends his sons or his barons
Mais en ceste ne vout il que nus y allast autre que lui
But in this-one not wished he that any there should-go other than he

pour ce que trop lui sembloit grant fait et mauvais
for this that too-much to-him seemed great deed and wicked
et perilleus de la surcuidance de ce desloial Nayan.
and perilous of the presumption of this disloyal Nayan
Or vous laisserons à conter de ceste matiere; retournerons à
Now you we-will-leave to tell of this matter we-will-return to
conter de grandismes faiz du grant Kaan. Et nous vous avons
tell of very-great deeds of-the great Khan And we to-you have
compté de quel lignage il fu, et son aage. Or vous dirai ce
told of what lineage he was and his age Now to-you I-will-tell that
que il fist à ses barons qui se porterent bien à la bataille,
which he did to his barons who themselves bore well at the battle
quant il retourna. Celui qui estoit seigneur de cent hommes,
when he returned Him who was lord of hundred men
si le fist de mille. Et qui estoit seigneur de mille, si le
so him he-made of thousand And who was lord of thousand so him
fist de dix mille. Et ainsi leur donnoit, si comme il veoit
he-made of ten thousand And thus to-them he-gave so as he saw
qu'il l'avoient deservi, à chascun selonc ce qu'il estoit.
that-they it-had deserved to each according-to that which-he was
Et sur tout ce, leur donnoit de belle vessellemente d'argent
And above all this to-them he-gave of fine plate of-silver
et d'autre beau hernois. Il leur croissoit leur table de
and of-other fine harness He to-them increased their tablet of
commandement. Il leur presentoit aussi de beaus joiaus d'or
command He to-them presented also of fine jewels of-gold
et d'argent et de perles et de pierres précieuses et de chevaus;
and of-silver and of pearls and of stones precious and of horses
et tant en donna à chascun que ce fu merveilles. Et non
and so-much thereof he-gave to each that it was marvels And not
pour quant il l'avoient bien deservi; car onques ne furent veu
for so-much they it-had well deserved for ever not were seen

hommes qui tant feissent d'armes por l'amour et l'onneur
men who so-much did of-arms for the-love and the-honor
de leur seigneur, comme il firent celui jour de la bataille.
of their lord as they did that day of the battle
Les tables de commandement sont si faites, que celui qui
The tablets of command are so made that he who
a seigneurie de cent hommes a table d'argent; et qui a
has lordship of hundred men has tablet of-silver and who has
seigneurie de mille, si a tables d'or ou d'argent doré. Celui
lordship of thousand so has tablets of-gold or of-silver gilded He
qui a seigneurie de dix mille, a table d'or à teste de lyon.
who has lordship of ten thousand has tablet of-gold with head of lion
Or si vous dirai le poys des tables et ce qu'elles signifient.
Now so to-you I-will-tell the weight of-the tablets and that which-they signify
Ceux qui ont seigneurie de cent et de mille, leur
Those who have lordship of hundred and of thousand their
table poyse chascune poys .c.xx. Et celle qui est
tablet weighs each weight a-hundred-twenty And that which is
la table de lyon entailliée dedens, qui ont la seigneurie de
the tablet of lion carved within who have the lordship of
dix mille, poyse aussi .c.xx. Et en toutes les tables
ten thousand weighs also a-hundred-twenty And on all the tablets
y a escript un commandement qui dist: «Par la force
there is written a command which says By the strength
du grant dieu et de la grant grace que il a donné
of-the great god and of the great grace which he has given
à notre empire le nom du Kaan soit beneoit; et tuit
to our empire the name of-the Khan be blessed and all
cil qui ne l'obeiront soient mort et destruit.»
those who not him-will-obey be dead and destroyed

Et encore vous di que touz ceuls qui ont ces tables, si ont
And further to-you I-tell that all those who have these tablets so have
aussi grant privileges de tout ce que il doivent faire en leur
also great privileges of all that which they must do in their
seigneurie. Encor sachiez que cil qui ont grant seigneurie de
lordship Further know that those who have great lordship of
cent mille hommes ou que il soit seigneur d'un grant ost
hundred thousand men or that he be lord of-a great host
general, cil ont une table d'or qui poise pres de trois cens.
general those have a tablet of-gold which weighs near of three hundred
Et y a lettres escriptes qui dient aussi comme autres que
And there are letters written which say also as others which
je vous ai dit. Et dessoubs les lettres y a pourtrait un
I to-you have said And beneath the letters there is portrayed a
lyon, et dessous le lyon est le solleil et la lune. Et puis
lion and beneath the lion is the sun and the moon And then
ont leur grant privileges de leur grans fais, et d'autre part
they-have their great privileges of their great deeds and of-other part
leur commandemenz. Et touz ceus qui ont si noble table, si
their commands And all those who have so noble tablet so
ont par commandement que toute fois que il chevauchent
have by command that all times that they ride
doivent avoir sus le chief un palieque que on dit ambrel, que
they-must have over the head a canopy which one calls umbrella which
on porte sur une lance en senefiance de grant seigneurie. Et
one carries upon a lance in significance of great lordship And
encore que toute fois que il siet, il siet en chaiere d'argent.
further that all times that he sits he sits in chair of-silver

Et encore à ces grans seigneurs leur donne une table de
And further to these great lords to-them he-gives a tablet of
jerfaus; et ce est à tres grans barons, par quoy il aient plaine
gerfalcons and this is to very great barons by which they may-have full

seigneurie et baille comme lui meismes. Car quant celui veult
lordship and authority as he himself For when that-one wishes
envoier messages en aucun lieu, si pourroit prendre les chevaus
to-send envoys into some place so he-could take the horses
du meilleur qui y fust, et toute autre chose à sa volenté.
of-the best who there were and all other thing at his will

Or vous laisserons de ceste matiere et vous conterons
Now you we-will-leave of this matter and to-you will-tell
des façons du grant Kaan et de sa contenance.
of-the fashions of-the great Khan and of his bearing

XXXIV · KUBLAI, HIS SONS, AND HIS PALACE

Kublai is of middle height, fair and ruddy, with four empresses, each with a court of ten thousand, and every year a hundred maidens of the Ungrat are tested for him. Of his twenty-two sons the eldest, Chinkim, died, so his son Temür will reign; seven sons are kings. At Khanbaliq the palace stands within two walls set with storehouses for his harness, on one level, its walls covered with gold and silver, its hall seating six thousand, beside a park of beasts, a lake, and a green hill planted with trees carried there by elephants.

Ci devise de la façon au grant Kaan. 81
Here describes of the fashion of-the great Khan

Le grant Kaan, Seigneur des Seigneurs, qui Çublay est
The great Khan Lord of-the Lords who Kublai is
appellez, est de telle façon. Il est de belle façon, ne petit ne
called is of such fashion He is of fair fashion nor small nor
grant; mais est de moienne grandesce. Il est chanus, de belle
great but is of middle stature He is fleshy of fair
maniere, et est trop bien tailliez de touz membres. Et si a
manner and is very well shaped of all limbs And so he-has

le vis blanc et vermeil; les yeux vairs, le nez bien fait et
the face white and vermilion the eyes gray-blue the nose well made and
bien seant. Et a quatre femmes lesquelles il tient toutesfois
well seemly And he-has four wives whom he holds always
pour ses droites moulliers. Et le greigneur filz que il a de
for his rightful wives And the eldest son which he has from
ces quatre femmes, doit estre par raison seigneur de l'empire:
these four wives must be by reason lord of the-empire
ce est quant le pere muert. Et sont appellées [ces quatre
this is when the father dies And they-are called these four
femmes] empereris; mais chascune a puis son autre nom.
wives empresses but each has then her other name
Et chascune de ces quatre dames tient moult belle court et
And each of these four ladies holds very fair court and
grant par soy. Car il n'y a nulles qui n'ait trois cens
great by herself For there not-there is any who not-have three hundred
damoiseles belles et plaisans. Et il ont aussi mains vaillans
damsels beautiful and pleasing And they have also many valiant
escuiers, et mains autres hommes et femmes; si que chascune
squires and many other men and women so that each
de ces dames a bien en sa court .x. mille personnes.
of these ladies has fully in her court ten thousand persons

Toutes fois que le seigneur veult gesir avec une de ces
All times that the lord wishes to-lie with one of these
quatre femmes, si la fait venir en sa chambre; et tel fois
four wives so her he-has come into his chamber and such time
vait à la chambre de lui. Il a encore maintes amies, et
he-goes to the chamber of her He has further many friends and
vous dirai en quel maniere. Il est voirs qu'il y a une
to-you I-will-tell in what manner It is true that-it there is a
generation de Tatars qui sont appellez Ungeat qui moult sont
generation of Tartars who are called Ungrat who very are

belles genz. Et chascun an li envoie on cent pucelles des
fair people And each year to-him sends one hundred maidens of-the
plus belles de celle generation, et sont amenées au grant
most beautiful of that generation and they-are brought to-the great
Kaan. Et il les fait garder à dames anciennes qui demeurent
Khan And he them has guarded by ladies old who dwell
en son palais. Et les font dormir avec elles en un lit pour
in his palace And them they-make sleep with them in a bed for
savoir se elles ont bonne alaine, et se elles sont bien saines
to-know if they have good breath and if they are well healthy
de touz leur membres. Et celles qui sont belles et bonnes
of all their limbs And those who are beautiful and good
et saines de toutes choses sont mises à servir le seigneur en
and healthy of all things are put to serve the lord in
ceste maniere que chascune trois jours et trois nuis six de ces
this manner that each three days and three nights six of these
damoiselles servent le seigneur en sa chambre, en son lit; et
damsels serve the lord in his chamber in his bed and
à tout ce qui li besoingne; et il en fait sa volenté. Et
in all that which to-him is-needful and he of-them does his will And
au chief de trois jours et de trois nuiz se partent, celles,
at-the end of three days and of three nights themselves depart those
et viennent autres six. Et ainsi tout l'an que chascun tiers
and come other six And thus all the-year that each third
jour et tierce nuit se changent de six en six damoiselles.
day and third night themselves change from six to six damsels

Ci devise des filz au grant Kaan. 82
Here describes of-the sons of-the great Khan

Le seigneur si a de ces quatre siennes mouliers .xxij.
The lord so has from these four his wives twenty-two
filz masles; et le grant avoit nom Chingui pour l'amour au
sons male and the great-one had name Chinkim for the-love of-the

bon Chingui Kaan, le premier seigneur des Tatars. Et cestui
good Genghis Khan the first lord of-the Tartars And this
Chingui, le graindre filz du Kaan, devoit regner apres la
Chinkim the greater son of-the Khan ought to-reign after the
mort du pere. Or avint qu'il morut. Mais il remest de
death of-the father Now it-happened that-he died But there remained from
lui un filz qui avoit nom Temur; et cestui doit estre grant
him a son who had name Temür and this-one must be great
Kaan et seigneur, apres la mort de son aioul. Et c'est
Khan and lord after the death of his grandfather And it-is
raison, pour ce qu'il fu du greigneur filz du grant Kaan.
reason for this that-he was of-the eldest son of-the great Khan
Et si vous di que cest Temur est sages et preus; car maintes
And so to-you I-tell that this Temür is wise and valiant for many
fois c'est ja moult bien prouvez. Et sachiez qu'encore a
times it-is already very well proved And know that-also has
le grant Kaan .xxv. autres filz de ses amies, qui sont bon
the great Khan twenty-five other sons from his friends who are good
et vaillant en fait d'armes. Et chascun est grant baron. Et
and valiant in deed of-arms And each is great baron And
si vous di que de ces enfans que il a de ses quatre loiaus
so you I-tell that of these children whom he has from his four lawful
femmes, en y a .vij. roys de grandismes provinces et
wives thereof there are seven kings of very-great provinces and
royaumes; et tuit maintiennent bien leur regne. Car il sont
kingdoms and all maintain well their realm For they are
sages hommes et preux, et c'est bien raison. Car sachiez
wise men and valiant and this-is well reason For know
que leur pere le grant Kaan est le plus sage homme et le
that their father the great Khan is the most wise man and the
plus preus de toutes choses; et le meilleur chevetaine d'ost,
most valiant of all things and the best captain of-host

et le meilleur rengeurs de genz et d'empire et de greigneur
and the best ruler of people and of-empire and of greatest
vaillance qui fust onques en toutes les generations de Tatars.
worth who was ever in all the generations of Tartars

Or vous ay devisé du grant Kaan et de ses femmes
Now to-you I-have described of-the great Khan and of his wives
et de ses filz. Or vous vueil deviser comment il tient
and of his sons Now to-you I-wish to-describe how he holds
court et sa maniere.
court and his manner

Ci devise du palais du grant Kaan. 83
Here describes of-the palace of-the great Khan

Sachiez que le grant Kaan demeure en la maistre cité
Know that the great Khan dwells in the master city
de Catay, laquelle a nom Cambaluc, trois mois de l'an;
of Cathay which has name Khanbaliq three months of the-year
c'est assavoir: decembre et janvier et fevrier. En ceste ville
this-is to-know December and January and February In this town
a son grant palais; et vous deviserai sa façon.
he-has his great palace and to-you I-will-describe its fashion

Il y a tout devant un grant mur quarré qui a de
It there is all before a great wall square which has of
chascune esquarreure une mille; c'est à dire que il dure tout
each side a mile this-is to say that it lasts all
environ quatre milles. Et c'est raison, car il est moult grans;
around four miles And this-is reason for it is very great
et si a de hautesce bien dix pas, et est touz blans et
and so has of height fully ten paces and is all white and
crenellez tout entour. Et en chascun coing de ce mur a
crenelated all around And in each corner of this wall there-is
un grant palais moult bel et moult riche, où se tient
a great palace very fair and very rich where itself keeps

dedens li hernois du seigneur. Ce sont ars et tatars et
within the harness of-the lord These are bows and quivers and
selles et frains, cordes d'ars; et toutes choses besoignables
saddles and bridles cords of-bows and all things needful
à ost. Et encore entre l'un palais et l'autre si a un
for host And further between the-one palace and the-other so there-is an
autre palais semblables, à un des quatre coins; si que il y
other palace like to one of-the four corners so that it there
a tout entour le pourpris huit palais moult grans, et touz
is all around the enclosure eight palaces very great and all
sont plains de hernois au grant Sire. Mais entendez qu'en
are full of harness of-the great Lord But understand that-in
chascun palais n'y a que d'une chose seulement; car, se
each palace not-there is but of-one thing only for if
l'un est tout plain d'ars, l'autre palais est touz plains de
the-one is all full of-bows the-other palace is all full of
selles, et l'autre touz plains de frains. Et ainsi vait par
saddles and the-other all full of bridles And thus it-goes through
chascun tout entour, que chascun n'a que d'une maniere
each all around so-that each not-has but of-one manner
de hernois. Et ce mur a à la face de midi cinq portes; ou
of harness And this wall has on the face of south five gates in-the
milieu a une grant porte qui ne s'euvre nulle fois, se
middle there-is a great gate which not itself-opens any time except
non quant le grant hernois ist pour ost. Et entre chascune
not when the great harness issues for host And between each
part de ceste grant porte si en y a deux; si qu'il en
part of this great gate so thereof there are two so that-it thereof
y a cinq et la grant est ou milieu. Et par ces portes
there is five and the great-one is in-the middle And through these gates
mendres entrent toute l'autre gent; et est la grant porte ou
lesser enter all the-other people and is the great gate in-the

milieu de ces quatre. Mais ces quatre portes où entrent la
middle of these four But these four gates where enter the
gent, ne sont mie l'une jouste l'autre; ains sont les deux aus
people not are at-all the-one beside the-other but are the two at-the
deux coins de ceste meisme face; et les autres deux sont
two corners of this same face and the others two are
du costé le grant; si que le grant demeure ou milieu.
of-the side (of-)the great-one so that the great-one remains in-the middle

Enmi ceste face, devers midi de ce mur, lonc une mille
Amid this face toward south of this wall long a mile
dedens ce mur, si a un autre mur qui est auques plus
within this wall so there-is an other wall which is somewhat more
longs que larges. Le pourpris a aussi huit palais entour, tout
long than wide The enclosure has also eight palaces around all
en la maniere des autres huit dehors, en quoi se tient aussi
in the manner of-the other eight outside in which itself keeps also
le harnois du seigneur si comme as autres. Et si y a
the harness of-the lord so as in-the others And so there are
aussi cinq portes en la face de midi, en la maniere des autres
also five gates on the face of south in the manner of-the others
qui sont dehors. Et puis en chascun des autres coins si a
which are outside And then in each of-the other corners so there-is
une porte. Et ou milieu de ces deux murs est le grant palais
a gate And in-the middle of these two walls is the great palace
du seigneur, qui est fait en ceste maniere que je vous dirai.
of-the lord which is made in this manner which I to-you will-tell

Sachiez que il est le greigneur qui onques fust. Il n'est pas
Know that it is the greatest which ever was It not-is at-all
esolier haut; mais est à pié plain, si que le pavement est plus
upper-story high but is at foot level so that the pavement is more
hault que l'autre terre entour, bien dix paumes. La couverture
high than the-other ground around fully ten palms The roof

est moult haute; les murs du palais et les chambres sont
is very high the walls of-the palace and the chambers are
toutes couvertes d'or et d'argent. Encore y a pourtrais:
all covered with-gold and with-silver Further there are portrayed
dragons, bestes, oiseaux, chevaliers et ymages et de pluseurs
dragons beasts birds knights and images and of several
autres generations de choses. Et la couverture est ainsi faite,
other generations of things And the roof is thus made
si que il n'y a autre chose que or et argent, et painture.
so that it not-there is other thing than gold and silver and painting
La sale est si grans et si large que bien y mengeroient six
The hall is so great and so wide that fully there would-eat six
mille personnes. Il y a tantes chambres que c'est merveille
thousand persons It there is so-many chambers that it-is marvel
à veoir. Il est si grans et si beaux, et si riche que il
to see It is so great and so fair and so rich that there
n'y a homme ou monde qui le seut mieux ordener.
not-there is man in-the world who it might-know better ordain
Les trez de la couverture si sont tous de couleur vermeille
The beams of the roof so are all of color vermilion
et jaune et vert et blou et d'autres couleurs. Et sont
and yellow and green and blue and of-other colors And they-are
envernissié si bien et si soutilment qu'il sont resplendissans
varnished so well and so subtly that-they are resplendent
comme cristaus; si que moult loing environ le palais est
as crystals so that very far around the palace is
resplendissans. Et sachiez que ceste couverture est si fort et
resplendent And know that this roof is so strong and
si fermement faite que elle est pour durer à touz temps.
so firmly made that it is for to-last for all times

Et entre l'un mur et l'autre des pourpris, si comme je vous
And between the-one wall and the-other of-the enclosures so as I to-you
ai dit, a moult belles praeries et beaux arbres de diverses
have said there-are very fine meadows and fine trees of diverse
manieres de fruiz. Et si y a bestes de maintes manieres, si
manners of fruits And so there are beasts of many manners so
comme cerfs et dains et chievres et biches, et vairs de
as stags and fallow-deer and roebucks and hinds and squirrels of
pluseurs manieres; et des bestes qui font le muglias en grant
several manners and of-the beasts which make the musk in great
habondance; et de toutes autres manieres de bestes moult belles
abundance and of all other manners of beasts very fine
et moult diverses. Et en y a tant que tout est plain; et
and very diverse And thereof there are so-many that all is full and
n'y a de voie se non tant que vont et viennent la gent.
not-there is of way except not so-much as go and come the people
Et de l'un coing à l'autre a un lac moult bel
And from the-one corner to the-other there-is a lake very fair
ouquel a pluseurs manieres de poissons et assez; car le
in-which there-are several manners of fish and plenty for the
seigneur les y a fait mettre. Et toutes fois que il en
lord them there has had put And all times that he thereof
veult, si en a à sa volenté et à son plaisir. Et si
wishes so thereof he-has at his will and at his pleasure And so
vous di que un flun y ist et entre; mais est si ordené
you I-tell that a river there issues and enters but it-is so ordered
que uns poissons n'en puet issir, pour le fil de fer
that a fish not-thereof can issue for the net of iron
ou d'arain qui ne l'en laissent issir. Encore y a devers
or of-bronze which not it-thence let issue Further there is toward
tremontaine loing du palais entour une archie, un tertre
north far from-the palace about a bowshot a billock

qui est fais à force, qui bien est haus cent pas, et dure
which is made by force which fully is high hundred paces and lasts
environ bien une mille, lequel mont est tout plain et tout
about fully a mile which mount is all full and all
couvert d'arbres, qui par nul temps n'y perdent fueilles;
covered with-trees which at any time not-there lose leaves
mais toutes fois sont vers. Et si vous di que là où soit
but all times are green And so you I-tell that there where be
un biaus arbres, et le seigneur le set: si l'envoie querre
a fine tree and the lord it knows so it-be-sends seek
avec toutes les racines et avec toute la terre qui li est
with all the roots and with all the earth which to-it is
entour; et le fait porter et mettre ou sien mont. Et le
around and it has carried and put in-the his mount And it
portent ses olifans; et soit l'arbre tant grant comme il veut.
carry his elephants and be the-tree as great as he wishes
Et en ceste maniere a les plus beaus arbres du monde.
And in this manner he-has the most fine trees of-the world
Et encore vous di que le seigneur a fait couvrir tout ce
And further you I-tell that the lord has had covered all this
mont de rose et de l'asur qui est moult vers; si que les
mount with rock and with the-azure which is very green so that the
arbres sont tuit vert, et le mont tout vert; si que il n'y
trees are all green and the mount all green so that it not-there
pert autre chose que tout vert. Et pour ce est il appellez
appears other thing than all green And for this is it called
«le mont vert». Et certes il a bien son nom à droit.
the mount green And certainly it has well its name by right

Et dessus le mont en la cime, si a un moult beau
And above the mount at the summit so there-is a very fine
palais et grant, et est tout vert dehors et dedens; si
palace and great and it-is all green outside and inside so

que le mont, et les arbres et le palais, est moult belle
that the mount and the trees and the palace is very fine
chose à veoir; et si plaisans pour l'oudeur toute d'une
thing to see and so pleasing for the-odor all of-one
maniere que c'est une merveille. Car tuit cil qui le voient
manner that it-is a marvel For all those who it see
en deviennent lie et joiant. Et pour ce l'a fait faire
thereof become glad and joyful And for this it-has had made
le grant Kaan pour avoir ce beau déduit, à ce que il
the great Khan for to-have this fine delight to this that he
puist avoir confort et soulaz et joie en son cuer.
may have comfort and solace and joy in his heart

XXXV · KHANBALIQ AND THE KHAN'S COURT

Beside his palace the Khan has built one like it for the son who will reign after him. He built Khanbaliq beside the old city when his astrologers warned that it would rebel: a square of twenty-four miles with twelve gates, a palace on each, straight streets, and a bell after which no one may go out at night. Twelve thousand horsemen, the Keshikten, guard him by turns. At his feasts he sits highest, facing south, with his wife on his left and his kin below; wine is drawn from a great golden vessel, and when he drinks everyone kneels.

Ci dist du palais du filz au grant Kaan. 84
Here tells of-the palace of-the son of-the great Khan
Encore sachiez que, de jouste ce palais, en a fait
Further know that from beside this palace thereof has had
faire, le seigneur, un autre tel, semblable au sien meismes;
made the lord an other such like to-the his same
si que de riens n'y faut. Et le fist faire pour son
so that in anything not-there it-fails And it he-had made for his

filz quant il regnera et sera seigneur. Et pour ce est
son when he will-reign and will-be lord And for this is
fait tout en tel maniere et aussi grant; si que toutes ces
made all in such manner and as great so that all these
manieres et ces coustumes puisse avoir apres son deces. Il
manners and these customs he-may have after his decease He
tient seau d'empire, mais non pas si acompliement comme
holds seal of-empire but not at-all so completely as
a le grant Kaan; sire tant comme il vivra.
has the great Khan lord as-long as he will-live

Or vous ay compté et devisé des palais au seigneur
Now to-you I-have told and described of-the palaces of-the lord
et à son filz. Ci vous vueil ore conter de la grant cité
and of his son Here to-you I-wish now to-tell of the great city
du Catay, là où ses palais sont; et pourquoy fu faite
of-the Cathay there where his palaces are and why it-was made
et comment, laquelle est appellée Cambaluc.
and how which is called Khanbaliq

Il est voirs que illec avoit anciennement une grant cité et
It is true that there was anciently a great city and
noble qui avoit nom Cambaluc, qui vaut à dire en notre
noble which had name Khanbaliq which is-worth to say in our
langue: «la cité du seigneur». Et le grant Kaan trouvoit par
tongue the city of-the lord And the great Khan found by
ses astronomiens que ceste cité se devoit rebeller et faire
his astrologers that this city itself must rebel and do
grant contraire contre l'empire. Et pour ceste achoison le
great opposition against the-empire And for this occasion the
grant Kaan y fist faire ceste cité de Cambaluc, de jouste
great Khan there had made this city of Khanbaliq from beside

celle, que il n'a que un flun enmi. Et fist traire les
that-one so-that there not-is but a river between And he-had drawn the
genz de ceste cité et metre en la ville que il avoit estorée.
people of this city and put into the town which he had built

Elle est si grant comme je vous conteray; car elle a de
It is so great as I to-you will-tell for it has of
tour .xxiiij. milles. C'est que en chascune esquarrie a de
circuit twenty-four miles That-is that in each square-side it-has of
face six milles; car elle est toute quarrée tant d'une part
face six miles for it is all square as-much on-one part
comme d'autre. Et est toute murée de murs de terre, qui
as on-other And it-is all walled with walls of earth which
sont gros dessouz bien dix pas; mais ne sont pas si gros
are thick below fully ten paces but not they-are at-all so thick
dessus comme dessouz, car il vont touz jours en estrecant;
above as below for they go all days in narrowing
si que dessus sont gros bien entour trois pas, et sont tuit
so that above they-are thick fully about three paces and are all
quarnelé. Les quarniaus sont blans; et ces murs sont haus
crenelated The crenels are white and these walls are high
plus de dix pas. Elle a douze portes, et sur chascune
more than ten paces It has twelve gates and upon each
porte a un grant palais moult bel; si que en chascune
gate there-is a great palace very fair so that in each
quarreure a trois portes et cinq palais, pour ce que en
side there-are three gates and five palaces for this that in
chascun coing a un palais moult grant et bel. Et en ces
each corner there-is a palace very great and fair And in these
palais a moult grans sales, là où les armes de ceus
palaces there-are very great halls there where the arms of those
qui gardent la cité sont. Et si sont les rues si droites que
who guard the city are And so are the streets so straight that

l'en voit d'une part à l'autre; car il sont si ordenné que
one sees from-one part to the-other for they are so ordered that
l'une porte se voit de l'autre, de long la ville par les rues.
the-one gate itself sees from the-other of long the town by the streets
Et y a par la cité de biaus palais et grans et moult
And there are through the city of fine palaces and great and many
de belles herbergeries et moult de belles maisons en grant
of fine inns and many of fine houses in great
habundances. Et a ou milieu de la cité un grandisme
abundances And there-is in-the middle of the city a very-great
palais auquel a une grant campane qui sonne la nuit;
palace in-which there-is a great bell which sounds the night
que nul n'aille par la ville depuis que elle aura
so-that anyone not-may-go through the town after that it will-have
sonné trois fois; car nus depuis n'y ose aler, senon pour
sounded three times for anyone afterward not-there dares go except for
besoing de femme qui travaille d'enfant, ou pour besoing de
need of woman who labors of-child or for need of
gens malades. Encore ceus qui ce vont, si convient que il
people sick Further those who this go so it-behooves that they
porte lumiere avec eulx. Et si vous di que il est ordonné
carry light with them And so to-you I-tell that it is ordained
que chascune porte de la cité soit gardée de mille hommes
that each gate of the city be guarded by thousand men
armez. Et n'entendez pas que il gardent pour paour que
armed And not-understand at-all that they guard for fear which
il aient de nul gent; mais le font pour honnourance et
they may-have of any people but it they-do for honoring and
gardance du seigneur qui laiens demeure; et encore que il
guarding of-the lord who in-there dwells and further that they
ne vueillent que les barons facent par la ville nul damage.
not wish that the barons do through the town any damage

Or vous ai conté de la ville; des hommes vous
Now to-you I-have told of the town of-the men to-you
conterons; comment il tient court, et des autres fais, si
we-will-tell how he holds court and of-the other deeds so
comme vous pourrez oïr.
as you will-be-able hear

Comment le grant Kaan se fait garder à .xij. mille 85
How the great Khan himself has guarded by twelve thousand
hommes à cheval, que on appelle Questiau.
men on horse whom one calls Keshikten

Or sachiez que le grant Kaan se fait garder par sa
Now know that the great Khan himself has guarded through his
grandesce à douze mille hommes à cheval; et sont appellez
greatness by twelve thousand men on horse and they-are called
Quesitau, qui vaut à dire en françois: «chevalier feelz au
Keshikten which is-worth to say in French knights faithful to-the
seigneur». Et ne le fait pas pour doutance que il ait de
lord And not it he-does at-all for fear that he may-have of
nul homme; mais pour grant hautesse. Et ont les douze mille
any man but for great loftiness And have the twelve thousand
hommes quatre chevetaines; car chascuns est chevetaines de
men four captains for each is captain of
trois mille hommes, et ces trois mille demeurent au palais
three thousand men and these three thousand dwell at-the palace
du seigneur trois jours et trois nuis. Et menjuent et boivent
of-the lord three days and three nights And they-eat and drink
laians. Et puis [ces trois jours et trois nuiz passez] s'en
in-there And then these three days and three nights passed themselves-thence
vont, et viennent les autres trois mille et gardent autant, et
they-go and come the other three thousand and guard as-much and
puis s'en partent, et reviennent les autres; si que on
then themselves-thence depart and come-back the others so that one

le garde toutefois à trois mille hommes à cheval, et sont
him guards always with three thousand men on horse and they-are
appellez Questiaus comme dit est, jusques à douze mille.
called Keshikten as said is until to twelve thousand
Et puis recommencent de rechief. Et ainssi vait tout l'an.
And then they-begin of anew And thus goes all the-year

Et quant le grant Kaan tient sa table pour aucune court
And when the great Khan holds his table for some court
que il face, il se siet en tel maniere; car sa table
which he may-make he himself sits in such manner for his table
est moult haute plus que les autres. Il siet en tremontaine,
is very high more than the others He sits in north
si que son vis est contre midi, et sa premiere femme siet
so that his face is toward south and his first wife sits
de jouste lui de la senestre partie. Et de la destre partie,
from beside him on the left part And on the right part
auques plus bas, sient ses filz et ses neveus, et ses parens,
somewhat more low sit his sons and his nephews and his kin
ceus qui sont de l'emperial lignie. Et sont si bas que leur
those who are of the-imperial line And they-are so low that their
chief vient aux piez du grant sire. Et puis les autres barons
head comes to-the feet of-the great lord And then the other barons
sieent es autres tables plus bas. Et ainsi vait des femmes;
sit at-the other tables more low And thus it-goes of-the women
car toutes les femmes au filz du seigneur et de ses neveus
for all the wives of-the son of-the lord and of his nephews
et de ses autres parens seent de la senestre partie aussi plus
and of his other kin sit on the left part also more
bas. Et après sieent toutes les autres dames des barons et
low And after sit all the other ladies of-the barons and
des chevaliers aussi plus bas; car chascun siet à son lieu qui
of-the knights also more low for each sits at his place which

est ordené par le seigneur. Et sont les tables en tel maniere
is ordained by the lord And are the tables in such manner
que le grant sire les puet touz veoir d'un chief à l'autre,
that the great lord them can all see from-one end to the-other
qui en y a moult grant quantité. Et dehors de ceste sale
which thereof there is very great quantity And outside of this hall
viennent plus de quarante mille hommes; car il vient moult
come more than forty thousand men for there comes many
de gent qui portent au seigneur moult de presens. Et ce
of people who bring to-the lord many of presents And these
sont gens d'estrange païs, qui li aportent choses estranges.
are people of-foreign country who to-him bring things strange

Et en un lieu de ceste sale, où le grant Kaan tient sa
And in a place of this hall where the great Khan holds his
table, est un grant pot de fin or, qui bien tient tant de vin
table is a great pot of fine gold which fully holds so-much of wine
comme un bousel communal. Et en chascun coing de ce grant
as a cask common And in each corner of this great
pot, si a une mendre; si que le vin de la grant vient au
pot so there-is a lesser-one so that the wine of the great-one comes to-the
petites qui li sont entour, aussi plaines de bons buvrages
little-ones which to-it are around also full of good drinks
d'espices moult fins, et de grant vaillance. Et se trait le vin
of-spices very fine and of great worth And itself draws the wine
de là avec granz vernigaus d'or fin, qui bien sont si grans
from there with great ladles of-gold fine which well are so great
que dix personnes en auroient assez à boivre. Et met l'en
that ten persons thereof would-have enough to drink And puts one
ce vernigal entre deux personnes; et puis deux autres petiz
this ladle between two persons and then two other little
hanas d'or à mances, si que chascuns prent du vin ou
cups of-gold with handles so that each takes of-the wine from-the

vernigal qui est entre deux un. Et aussi en ont les dames
ladle which is between two one And also thereof have the ladies
les leur. Si que sachiez que ces vernigaus et ces hanas vallent
the theirs So that know that these ladles and these cups are-worth
un grant tresor; car le grant Kaan a une si grant quantité
a great treasure for the great Khan has a so great quantity
de celle vessellemente et d'autre d'or et d'argent qu'il
of that plate and of-other of-gold and of-silver that-there
n'est nulz qui l'oïst, et ne le veist, qui le peust croire.
not-is anyone who it-heard and not it saw who it could believe

Et sachiez que ceulz qui font la creance au grant Kaan,
And know that those who make the tasting for-the great Khan
de viandes et de buvrages, sont pluseurs granz barons. Et
of foods and of drinks are several great barons And
ont couverte la bouche, et le nes, de belles touailles d'or
they-have covered the mouth and the nose with fine towels of-gold
et de soie, à ce que leur alaine, ne leur oudeur n'entrast
and of silk to this that their breath nor their odor not-should-enter
en la viande, ni ès buvrages du grant sire. Et quant le
in the food nor in-the drinks of-the great lord And when the
seigneur doit boire, touz les instruments que il a, dont il
lord must drink all the instruments which he has of-which he
a grant quantité de toutes manieres, commencent à sonner.
has great quantity of all manners begin to sound
Et quant il tient la coupe en main, touz les barons, et
And when he holds the cup in hand all the barons and
touz ceus qui y sont, s'agenoillent, et font signe de
all those who there are themselves-kneel and make sign of
grant humilité. Et adonc boit le grant sire; et toutes les
great humility And then drinks the great lord and all the
fois que il boit, si fait aussi comme vous avez ouy.
times that he drinks so one-does also as you have heard

Des viandes ne vous conterai mie, pour ce que chascun
Of-the foods not to-you I-will-tell at-all for this that each
doit croire que il en y a de grant habondance de
must believe that it thereof there is of great abundance of
toutes manieres. Et sachiez que tuit li baron et tuit
all manners And know that all the barons and all
li chevaliers qui là menjuent, que toutes leur femmes
the knights who there eat that all their wives
y menjuent avec les autres dames. Et quant touz ont
there eat with the other ladies And when all have
mengié, et les tables sont ostées, si vient en la sale devant
eaten and the tables are removed so comes into the hall before
le seigneur, et devant touz les autres, grant quantité de
the lord and before all the others great quantity of
jougleours et d'entregetours de maintes pluseurs manieres
jongleurs and of-jugglers of many several manners
de granz experimenz, et tuit font grant soulas, et grant
of great feats and all make great solace and great
festes devant lui et devant chascun; si que chascuns en
feasts before him and before each so that each thereof
rit et fait joie du soulaz. Et quant tout ce est fait, si
laughs and makes joy of-the solace And when all this is done so
s'en partent les genz et vait chascuns en son hostel.
themselves-thence depart the people and goes each to his lodging

On his birthday in September the Khan and twelve thousand barons dress alike in gold, and the regions bring presents while every faith prays for him. At the White Feast, the new year in February, all dress in white, and a hundred thousand white horses and five thousand elephants laden with his plate pass before him. In the morning kings, barons, astrologers, and officers gather in rank in the great hall, and at the word they bow four times, worship him as a god, and incense the tablet bearing his name.

86 Ci devise de la grant feste que fait le grant Kaan chascun
Here describes of the great feast which makes the great Khan each
an de sa nativité.
year of his nativity

Et sachiez que tuit les Tatars font feste, chascun an,
And know that all the Tartars make feast each year
de leur nativité. Et le grant Kaan fu nez au .xxviij.
of their nativity And the great Khan was born on-the twenty-eighth
jour de la lune du mois de septembre. Si que, en celui
day of the moon of-the month of September So that on that
jour de la lune du mois de septembre, fait la greignor
day of the moon of-the month of September he-makes the greatest
feste que il face tout l'an, fors celle que il font du
feast which he may-make all the-year except that which they make of-the
chief de l'an; si comme je vous conterai après ceste.
head of the-year so as I to-you will-tell after this-one

Or sachiez que le jour de sa nativité le grant Kaan se
Now know that the day of his nativity the great Khan himself
vest de ses meilleur draps à or batu. Et bien douze mille
dresses in his best cloths of gold beaten And fully twelve thousand
barons et chevaliers se vestent, ce meismes jour, de celle
barons and knights themselves dress this same day in that

meismes couleur, et tout d'une maniere semblable à celle du
same color and all of-one manner like to that of-the
grant sire; mais non pas que il soient si chier; mais il sont
great lord but not at-all that they be so dear but they are
tuit d'une couleur, et tuit sont draps de soie à or. Et encore
all of-one color and all are cloths of silk with gold And further
a, chascun de ces vestuz, çainture d'or; et ces vestemens
has each of these clothed-ones belt of-gold and these garments
leur donne le seigneur. Et si vous di qu'il y a de ces
to-them gives the lord And so to-you I-tell that-it there is of these
vestemenz qui ont tant de perles et de pierres dessus qui
garments which have so-many of pearls and of stones above which
vallent bien dix mille besans d'or. Et de ces vestemenz en
are-worth fully ten thousand bezants of-gold And of these garments thereof
y a pluseurs. Et si sachiez que le grant Kaan par treize fois
there are several And so know that the great Khan by thirteen times
l'an leur donne à chascun de ses douze mille barons et
the-year to-them gives to each of his twelve thousand barons and
chevaliers telz vestemenz comme je vous ai dit. Et toute fois
knights such garments as I to-you have said And every time
se vest avec eus d'une meisme couleur. Si que chascune fois
himself dresses with them of-one same color So that each time
est devisée l'une couleur de l'autre. Et ce povez vous veoir
is distinguished the-one color from the-other And this can you see
que ce est moult grant chose que il n'a nul seigneur ou
that this is very great thing for it not-there-is any lord in-the
monde qui le peust faire ne maintenir, fors que lui seulement.
world who it could do nor maintain except than he only

Et ce jour meismes de sa nativité touz les Tatars du
And this day same of his nativity all the Tartars of-the
monde et toutes les regions et provinces qui de lui tiennent
world and all the regions and provinces which from him hold

terre li font grans presens chascun de son povoir, qui
land to-him make great presents each of his power which
soit convenable et qui est ordené. Et encore y vient maint
be fitting and which is ordained And further there comes many
autre gent avec grans presens chascun pour demander aucune
other people with great presents each for to-ask some
grace du seigneur. Et le grant sire a esleu douze barons qui
grace of-the lord And the great lord has chosen twelve barons who
sont sus ce fait à donner à chascun ce que il leur samble
are over this matter to give to each that which he to-them seems
que il afiert. Et encore en cestui jour touz les ydolatres et
that it befits And further on this day all the idolaters and
touz les sarrazins et touz les crestiens et toutes les autres
all the Saracens and all the Christians and all the other
generations de gens font grans oroisons et grans prierres
generations of people make great orisons and great prayers
chascun à son dieu à grant chant et grant luminaire, et
each to his god with great chant and great lighting and
grant encens: que il leur sauve leur seigneur et li doint
great incense that he for-them save their lord and to-him give
longue vie et joie et santé. Et en tel maniere comme je vous
long life and joy and health And in such manner as I to-you
ai conté dure en celui jour la joie et la feste de sa nativité.
have told lasts on that day the joy and the feast of his nativity

Or vous lairons de ce, que bien vous en avons conté.
Now you we-will-leave of this for well you thereof we-have told
Et vous conterons d'une autre grant feste que il font
And to-you will-tell of-an other great feast which they make
le chief de leur an, qui est appellée: «la blanche feste».
the head of their year which is called the white feast

Ci devise de la grant feste que le grant Kaan fait à 87
Here describes of the great feast which the great Khan makes at
leur chief de l'an.
their head of the-year

Il est voirs que il font leur chief de l'an le moys
It is true that they make their head of the-year the month
de fevrier; et le grant sire et touz ceus qui sont sougiet
of February and the great lord and all those who are subject
à li font aussi une tel feste si comme je vous conterai.
to him make also a such feast so as I to-you will-tell

Il est usage que le grant Kaan o touz ses subgiez se
It is usage that the great Khan with all his subjects themselves
vestent touz de robes blanches, si que chascuns en celui jour,
dress all in robes white so that each on that day
et hommes et femmes, petis et grans, sont touz vestus de
both men and women small and great are all dressed in
blanc. Et ce font il pour ce que blanche vesteure leur
white And this do they for this that white clothing to-them
semble bonneureuse et bonne; et por ce la vestent il le
seems fortunate and good and for this it wear they the
chief de leur an, à ce que tuit l'an aient bien et joie.
head of their year to this that all the-year they-may-have good and joy
Et cestui jour toutes les genz de toutes provinces et régions
And this day all the people of all provinces and regions
et royaumes et contrées, qui de lui tiennent terre, li
and kingdoms and countries who from him hold land to-him
portent grans presenz d'or et d'argent et de perles et de
bring great presents of-gold and of-silver and of pearls and of
pierres et de mains riches draps. Et ce font il à ce que
stones and of many rich cloths And this do they to this that
tuit l'an le seigneur en povist avoir tressor assez et joie
all the-year the lord thereof might have treasure plenty and joy

et leesce. Et encore se presentent, l'une gent à l'autre,
and gladness And further themselves present the-one people to the-other
choses blanches, et s'acollent et baisent, et font grant
things white and themselves-embrace and kiss and make great
joie, à ce que tout l'an il aient joie et bonne aventure.
joy to this that all the-year they may-have joy and good fortune
Et sachiez qu'en ce jour vient presens au seigneur, de
And know that-on this day come presents to-the lord from
pluseurs parties qui sont ordenées, plus de cent mille
several parts which are ordained more than hundred thousand
chevaus blans moult beaus et riches. Et en celui jour, touz
horses white very fine and rich And on that day all
ses olifans, qui sont bien cinq mille sont tuit couvers de
his elephants which are fully five thousand are all covered with
draps entailliez, moult beaus et riches, et porte chascun sur
cloths embroidered very fine and rich and carries each upon
son dos deux ecrins moult beaulx et riches qui sont tout
its back two caskets very fine and rich which are all
plain de vessellemente du seigneur, et d'autres riche hernois
full of plate of-the lord and of-other rich harness
qui besoigne à celle court de la blanche feste. Et encore y
which is-needful to that court of the white feast And further there
vient grandisme quantité de chameus aussi couvers de moult
comes very-great quantity of camels also covered with very
riches draps qui sont tout chargiés de choses qui besoignent
rich cloths which are all laden with things which are-needful
à ceste feste. Et tuit passe par devant le grand Sire; et
for this feast And all pass by before the great Lord and
ce est la plus belle chose à veoir qui soit ou monde.
this is the most fine thing to see which be in-the world

Encore vous di que le matin de celle feste, avant que
Further to-you I-tell that the morning of that feast before that
les tables soient mises, touz les roys et touz les barons,
the tables be set all the kings and all the barons
et touz les contes, et touz les ducs et marchis et barons
and all the counts and all the dukes and marquises and barons
et chevaliers et astronomiens et philosophes, et mires
and knights and astrologers and philosophers and physicians
et fauconniers, et mains autres officiers de toutes les terres
and falconers and many other officers of all the lands
entour, viennent en la grant sale devant le seigneur. Et
around come into the great hall before the lord And
ceux qui ne puent [entrer] dedens demeurent en tel lieu
those who not can enter within remain in such place
dehors que le seigneur les puet bien touz veoir. Et sont
outside that the lord them can well all see And they-are
tuit ordené en tel maniere. Premierement sont ses filz et
all ordered in such manner First are his sons and
ses neveus, et ceus de son lignage emperial. Apres sont les
his nephews and those of his lineage imperial After are the
roys et puis les ducs, et puis chascun apres l'autre selonc
kings and then the dukes and then each after the-other according-to
son gré qui li est convenable. Et quant il sont assis
his degree which to-him is fitting And when they are seated
chascuns en son lieu, adonc se lieve un des plus sages, et
each in his place then himself rises one of-the most wise and
dist à haute voiz: «enclinez et aourez.» Et tantost que il
says with high voice bow and worship And as-soon that he
a ce dit, il enclinent maintenant et metent leur front en
has this said they bow at-once and put their forehead to
terre, et font leur oroisons envers le seigneur. Et l'aourent
earth and make their orisons toward the lord And him-they-worship

aussi comme se il fust diex. Et en telle maniere l'aourent
also as if he were god And in such manner him-they-worship
par quatre fois. Et puis vont à un autel qui moult est
by four times And then they-go to an altar which very is
bien aournez. Et sus cel autel a une table vermeille en
well adorned And upon that altar there-is a tablet vermilion on
laquelle a escript le nom du grant Kaan. Et y a un
which there-is written the name of-the great Khan And there is a
bel encensier d'or, et encensent celle table et l'autel à
fine censer of-gold and they-incense that tablet and the-altar with
grant reverence; puis s'en torne chascuns en son lieu.
great reverence then himself-thence turns each to his place

Et quant il ont tout ce fait, adonc se font les
And when they have all this done then themselves make the
presens que je vous ai conté, qui sont de si grant vaillance
presents which I to-you have told which are of so great worth
et si riche. Et quant les presens sont tuit fait, et il a
and so rich And when the presents are all made and he has
veues toutes ces choses, si li mettent toutes les tables.
seen all these things so for-him they-set all the tables
Et quant elles sont mises, si s'assiet chascuns en son
And when they are set so himself-seats each in his
lieu si ordeneement comme je vous ai conté autrefois. Et
place so orderly as I to-you have told another-time And
quant il ont mengié, si viennent les jugleours et soulagent
when they have eaten so come the jongleurs and solace
la court si comme autrefois avez ouy. Quant tout ce est
the court so as another-time you-have heard When all this is
fait, si s'en tourne chascuns en son hostel.
done so himself-thence turns each to his lodging

Or vous ai devisé de la blanche feste du chief
Now to-you I-have described of the white feast of-the head
de l'an; si vous conterai ore d'une noble chose que le
of the-year so to-you I-will-tell now of-a noble thing which the
seigneur fait de ses vestemenz que il donne à ses barons
lord does with his garments which he gives to his barons
pour venir à ses ordenées festes que je vous ai dit.
for to-come to his ordained feasts which I to-you have said

XXXVII · THE BARONS' ROBES AND THE KHAN'S BEASTS OF CHASE

The Khan gives each of his twelve thousand barons thirteen robes, one for each feast and of a different color, with a golden belt and boots worked with silver: a hundred and fifty-six thousand robes in all. A great lion lies down before him at the feast. While he is at Khanbaliq the country for forty days around sends him game, and from farther off the hides. He keeps trained leopards, wolves, eagles that take wolves, and lions striped black, red, and white that he carries in carts to hunt boars, bears, and wild oxen.

Ci devise de .xii.m. barons qui ont robes d'or du 88
Here describes of twelve-thousand barons who have robes of-gold from-the
Seigneur à ces granz festes, .xiii. paires chascun.
Lord at these great feasts thirteen pairs each
Or sachiez vraiement que le grant Kaan a ordonné douze
Now know truly that the great Khan has ordained twelve
mille de ses hommes, qui ont à nom: Quesitan, si comme
thousand of his men who have as name Keshikten so as
je vous ai dit autrefois; et à chascun de ces douze mille
I to-you have said another-time and to each of these twelve thousand
barons donne treize robes toutes devisées l'une de l'autre.
barons he-gives thirteen robes all distinguished the-one from the-other

C'est à dire: que toutes douze mille sont d'une couleur;
That-is to say that all twelve thousand are of-one color
et puis les autres douze mille d'une autre; si qu'elles sont
and then the other twelve thousand of-an other so that-they are
devisées l'une de l'autre en treize manieres de couleurs. Et
distinguished the-one from the-other in thirteen manners of colors And
sont aournées de pierres et de perles, et d'autres nobles
they-are adorned with stones and with pearls and with-other noble
choses moult richement et de moult grant vaillance. Encore
things very richly and of very great worth Further
lor donne à chascun de ces douze mille barons avec
to-them he-gives to each of these twelve thousand barons with
chascune robe, qui est treize fois en l'an, une ceinture d'or
each robe which is thirteen times in the-year a belt of-gold
moult belle et moult riche et de grant vaillance. Et encore
very fine and very rich and of great worth And further
une paire de chaucemente de camut qui est bourgal, labouré
a pair of footwear of leather which is bulghar worked
de fil d'argent moult soutilment; si que, quant il ont
with thread of-silver very subtly so that when they have
ce vestu, si semble, chascuns d'eus un roys. Et à chascune
this donned so seems each of-them a king And at each
de ces treize festes est ordonné laquelle robe qu'il doivent
of these thirteen feasts is ordained which robe that-they must
vestir. Et aussi le seigneur a treize robes semblables à celles
don And also the lord has thirteen robes like to those
de ses barons: c'est de couleur; mais elles sont plus nobles
of his barons this-is of color but they are more noble
et plus riches et de plus grant vaillance. Si que tout ce
and more rich and of more great worth So that all this
vaut tant de tresor que à painnes le pourroit on conter
is-worth so-much of treasure that with pains it could one tell

ne nombrer. Si que toutes fois il se vest d'une couleur
nor number So that all times he himself dresses of-one color
avec ses barons qui sont [si comme ses] compaignons.
with his barons who are so as his companions

Or vous ai devisé des treize vestemenz que ont les douze
Now to-you I-have described of-the thirteen garments which have the twelve
mille barons, de leur seigneur, qui vallent .c.lvj.m.
thousand barons from their lord which make a-hundred-fifty-six-thousand
vestemens si chiers et de si grant vaillance comme je vous
garments so dear and of so great worth as I to-you
ai conté, sans les ceintures et les chaucementes qui aussi
have told without the belts and the footwear which also
vallent tresor assez. Et tout ce a fait le grant Sire à ce
are-worth treasure plenty And all this has done the great Lord to this
que ses festes soient plus honnorables et plus grans. Encore
that his feasts be more honorable and more great Further
vous dirai une autre chose que je vous avoie oubliée à
to-you I-will-tell an other thing which I to-you had forgotten to
conter, qui bien vous semblera merveilles à ouïr en ce livre.
tell which well to-you will-seem marvels to hear in this book
Sachiez que le jour de la feste un grant lyon est menez
Know that the day of the feast a great lion is led
devant le seigneur. Et le lyon, tantost que il le voit, se
before the lord And the lion as-soon that he him sees himself
gette gesir devant lui et fait signe de grant humilité, et
throws lie before him and makes sign of great humility and
semble que il le congnoisce pour seigneur. Et ainssi demeure
seems that he him know for lord And thus remains
devant lui sans nulle chaene. Et, certes, c'est une chose
before him without any chain And certainly it-is a thing
qui est moult estrange à ouïr à touz ceus qui ne l'ont veu.
which is very strange to hear to all those who not it-have seen

Or vous ai conté de tout ce, bien et ordeneement. Si vous
Now to-you I-have told of all this well and orderly So to-you
conterai ore de la grant chace que le seigneur fait faire pour
I-will-tell now of the great hunt which the lord has made for
avoir des venoisons, tant comme il demeure en sa maistre cité
to-have of-the venisons as-long as he dwells in his master city
du Catai, qui Cambaluc a nom, si comme vous porrez ouïr.
of-the Cathay which Khanbaliq has name so as you will-be-able hear

89 Comment le grant Kaan a ordené de ses genz qu'il
How the great Khan has ordained of his people that-they
li apportent des venoisons.
to-him bring of-the venisons

Entrementieres que le seigneur demeure, en sa maistre
Meanwhile that the lord dwells in his master
cité, ces trois mois, c'est assavoir: decembre, janvier et
city these three months this-is to-know December January and
fevrier, il est establi que de quarante journées environ il
February it is established that from forty day-journeys around they
doivent chacier et oiseler, et envoier ce que l'en prent
must hunt and fowl and send that which one takes
des grandes bestes. C'est à entendre si comme sangliers,
of-the great beasts That-is to understand so as boars
biches, dains, cers, lyons, ours et d'autres manieres de
hinds fallow-deer stags lions bears and of-other manners of
grans bestes sauvages et d'autres oiseleis; et de tout ce la
great beasts wild and of-other fowl and of all this the
graigneur part. Et toutes les bestes que ceus li veulent
greater part And all the beasts which those to-him wish
envoier, si font traire toutes les entrailles de dedens le
to-send so they-have drawn all the entrails from within the
ventre; puis les mettent sur charrettes et les envoient au
belly then them put upon carts and them send to-the

seigneur. Mais ce font, ceus de vingt à trente journées, de
lord But this do those from twenty to thirty day-journeys of
quoy il en y a moult grant quantité. Mais ceus qui sont
which it thereof there is very great quantity But those who are
si loing que on ne li puet envoier les chars; si li
so far that one not to-him can send the meats so to-him
envoient les piaux, et sont tuit afetiées. Si que le seigneur
they-send the skins and they-are all dressed So that the lord
en fait faire toutes ses besoingnes d'armes pour ost.
thereof has made all his needs of-arms for host

Or vous ai devisé de ce; si vous conterai des fieres
Now to-you I-have described of this so to-you I-will-tell of-the fierce
bestes que le grant Sire tient pour chacier, et pour avoir
beasts which the great Lord keeps for to-hunt and for to-have
son delit avec elles.
his delight with them

Ci devise des lyons et des lupars et des lous affaitiez 90
Here describes of-the lions and of-the leopards and of-the wolves trained
pour chacier.
for to-hunt

Encor sachiez que le grant Sire a lupars assez affaitiez qui
Further know that the great Lord has leopards plenty trained which
tuit sont bons à chacier et à prendre bestes. Il y a encor
all are good to hunt and to take beasts It there is further
grant quantité de loups affaitiez qui tuit prennent bestes et
great quantity of wolves trained which all take beasts and
moult sont bons pour chace. Il a encor pluseurs lyons grans,
very are good for hunt It there-is further several lions great
greigneurs assez que ceus de Babiloine, et sont moult beaus
greater much than those of Babylon and they-are very fine
de couleurs et de poil; car il sont tuit vergié, par le lonc, de
of colors and of hair for they are all striped by the long with

noir et de vermeil et de blanc; et sont si affaitiez à prendre
black and with vermilion and with white and they-are so trained to take
sangliers, et bues sauvages et ours et asnes sauvages, et cers
boars and oxen wild and bears and asses wild and stags
et autres grans bestes et fieres. Et vous di que c'est moult
and other great beasts and fierce And to-you I-tell that it-is very
belle chose à veoir les fieres bestes que ces lyons prennent.
fine thing to see the fierce beasts which these lions take
Car quant il veulent chacier de ces lyons, si les portent
For when they wish to-hunt with these lions so them they-carry
en une charrete couverte. Et avec chascun a un petit
in a cart covered And with each there-is a little
chiennet. Encore y a grant multitude d'aigles qui sont tuit
puppy Further there is great multitude of-eagles which are all
affaitiez de prendre loups et goulpis et dains, et chevriaus;
trained to take wolves and foxes and fallow-deer and kids
car il en prennent assez. Mais, ceus qui sont affaitiez
for they thereof take plenty But those which are trained
à prendre loups, sont moult grant et de grant puissance.
to take wolves are very great and of great might
Car il ne treuvent loup, qui devant euls puisse eschapper.
For they not find wolf which before them may escape

Or vous ai de ce conté et devisé. Si vous conterai
Now to-you I-have of this told and described So to-you I-will-tell
comment le seigneur fait tenir grandisme quantité de grans
how the lord has kept very-great quantity of great
chiens.
dogs

Two brothers, Bayan and Mingan, command ten thousand men each, one side in red and the other in blue, each with five thousand mastiffs, and sweep the country a day wide. In March the Khan goes toward the ocean with ten thousand falconers, carried in a chamber on four elephants, and lets his gerfalcons fly at cranes without leaving his bed. A baron keeps everything found until its owner claims it. At Cachar Modun he camps in tents lined with ermine and sable, and no one within twenty days may hunt with bird or dog.

Ci dist des .ii. frères qui sont sus les chiens. 91

Here tells of-the two brothers who are over the dogs

Il est voirs que le seigneur a deux barons qui sont

It is true that the lord has two barons who are

freres charnelz; que l'un a nom Baia, et l'autre Mingam.

brothers carnal so-that the-one has name Bayan and the-other Mingan

Et l'en les appelle: Cunici, qui vaut à dire: «sus les

And one them calls Cunichi which is-worth to say over the

chiens mastins.» Et chascun de ces deux freres a dix mille

dogs mastiff And each of these two brothers has ten thousand

hommes souz lui, qui tous sont vestus d'une couleur; et les

men under him who all are dressed in-one color and the

autres dix mille d'une autre couleur: les uns de vermeil et

other ten thousand in-one other color the ones in vermilion and

les autres de bleu. Et toutes les fois que il vont avec le

the others in blue And all the times that they go with the

seigneur en chace, si vestent ces vestemenz que je vous ai

lord on hunt so they-wear these garments which I to-you have

dit pour estre congneus. En chascun de ces dix mille s'en

said for to-be known In each of these ten thousand thereof

a deux mille que chascun a un grant chien mastin,

there-are two thousand so-that each has a great dog mastiff

ou deux ou plus; si qu'il en y a grant quantité. Et
or two or more so that-it thereof there is great quantity And
quant le seigneur vait en chace, si vait l'un de ces barons
when the lord goes on hunt so goes the-one of these barons
avec ses dix mille hommes qui ont bien cinq mille chiens
with his ten thousand men who have fully five thousand dogs
de l'une part à destre, et l'autre vait aussi de l'autre part
on the-one part at right and the-other goes also on the-other part
à senestre. Il vont tuit jouste l'un de l'autre; si que il
at left They go all beside the-one of the-other so that it
tient bien une journée de terre touz; et ne treuvent nulle
holds fully a day-journey of land all and not they-find any
beste qui ne soit prise; si que c'est trop belle chose à veoir
beast which not be taken so that it-is very fine thing to see
leur chace, et la maniere des chiens et des chaceours. Car
their hunt and the manner of-the dogs and of-the hunters For
quant le seigneur chevauche avec ses barons parmi les landes
when the lord rides with his barons through the moors
oiselant; si verriez venir de ces grans chiens courans: que
fowling so you-would-see come of these great dogs running some
derriere ours, que derrieres cers, que derrieres autres bestes
behind bears some behind stags some behind other beasts
chassant et prenant çà et là d'une partie et d'autre;
chasing and taking here and there on-one part and on-other
si que ce est moult belle chose à veoir et délitable.
so that this is very fine thing to see and delightful

Or vous ai conté de ceus qui tiennent les chiens
Now to-you I-have told of those who keep the dogs
de chace et leur maniere; si vous conterai comment le
of hunt and their manner so to-you I-will-tell how the
seigneur s'en vait les autres trois moys.
lord himself-thence goes the other three months

Et quant le seigneur si demeure en sa maistre cité, que
And when the lord so dwells in his master city which
je vous ai nommé dessus, trois mois: c'est decembre et
I to-you have named above three months this-is December and
janvier et fevrier, si se part de la cité le premier jour
January and February so himself he-departs from the city the first day
de mars et vait vers midi jusques à la mer occeane où
of March and goes toward south as-far-as to the sea ocean where
il y a deux journées. Il maine avec li bien dix mille
it there is two day-journeys He leads with him fully ten thousand
fauconniers et porte bien cinq cents jerfaus et de faucons
falconers and carries fully five hundred gerfalcons and of falcons
pelerins et sacres d'autres manieres en grant habondance;
peregrine and sakers of-other manners in great abundance
et des ostoirs aussi assez pour oiseler aus rivieres. Mais
and of-the goshawks also plenty for to-fowl at-the rivers But
n'entendez pas que il les tiengne tuit o soi en un lieu;
not-understand at-all that he them keep all with himself in one place
mais les partist çà et là à cent et à deux cents et
but them divides here and there by hundred and by two hundred and
à plus, si comme il leur semble. Et toutes fois vont ceus
by more so as it to-them seems And all times go those
oiselant; et la greigneur partie de leur proie si portent
fowling and the greater part of their prey so they-carry
à leur grant Sire. Et vous di que quant le seigneur vait
to their great Lord And to-you I-tell that when the lord goes
oiselant avec ses jerfaus et avec autres oisiaus, il a bien
fowling with his gerfalcons and with other birds he has fully
dix mille hommes entour lui qui sont tuit ordené deux et
ten thousand men around him who are all ordered two and
deux; et s'appellent Toscaor, qui vaut à dire: «hommes qui
two and themselves-call Toscaol which is-worth to say men who

se prennent garde.» Et ainssi font il; car deux et deux
themselves take care And thus do they for two and two
demeurent çà et là: si que bien tiennent de terre assez.
remain here and there so that well they-hold of land plenty

92 Comment le grant Kaan vait en trace.
How the great Khan goes on hunt

Et chascun a un reclaim et un chapellet à ce que il
And each has a lure and a little-hood to this that they
puissent clamer leur oisiaus et tenir. Et quant le seigneur fait
may call their birds and hold And when the lord has
jeter ses oisiaus, il n'y a mestier que ceus qui les getent
cast his birds it not-there is need that those who them cast
lor voisent derriere, pour ce que les hommes que je vous
to-them should-go behind for this that the men whom I to-you
ai dit, qui sont çà et là, les gardent si bien que il ne
have said who are here and there them guard so well that they not
pueent aler nulle part que ces hommes ne voisent apres. Et se
can go any part that these men not should-go after And if
les oisiaus ont mestier de secours, si leur aident maintenant.
the birds have need of help so to-them they-aid at-once

Et touz les oisiaus du seigneur si ont chascun une petite
And all the birds of-the lord so have each a little
tablete aus piez pour estre congneus, et aussi ont touz
tablet at-the feet for to-be known and also have all
ceus des barons, en laquelle tablete est escript de chascun
those of-the barons on which tablet is written of each
le nom de qui il est, et qui l'a en garde. Et par ceste
the name of whom he is and who him-has in keeping And by this
maniere est li oisiaus congneus tantost que il est pris, et
manner is the bird known as-soon that he is taken and
est rendus à celui de qui il est. Et se il ne scevent de
is rendered to him of whom he is And if they not know of

qui il est, si l'aportent et donnent à un baron qui est
whom he is so him-they-bring and give to a baron who is
appellez bulargusi, qui veut dire: «le gardien des choses qui
called bularguchi which wishes to-say the guardian of-the things which
ne treuvent seigneur.» Car je vous di que se l'en treuve un
not find lord For I to-you tell that if one finds a
cheval, ou une espée, ou un oisel, ou autre chose, et l'en
horse or a sword or a bird or other thing and one
ne sache de qui il est; si est porté maintenant à cestui
not know of whom it is so it-is carried at-once to this
baron. Et cil le fait prendre et garder. Et se celui qui
baron And he it has taken and guarded And if he who
l'a treuvé ne l'aporte tantost, si est ataint à cest baron.
it-has found not it-brings at-once so he-is held-guilty by this baron
Et ceulx qui les choses auront perdu s'en vont à
And those who the things will-have lost themselves-thence go to
cellui baron; et s'il l'a, si la rent de maintenant.
that baron and if-he it-has so it he-renders from at-once

Et cestui baron demeure toutefois es plus haus lieus de tout
And this baron dwells always in-the most high places of all
l'ost, avec son gonfanon; pour ce que ceus qui ont perdu ou
the-host with his banner for this that those who have lost or
trouvé aucune chose le voient clerement. Et en ceste maniere
found some thing him may-see clearly And in this manner
ne se puet perdre nulle chose qui ne soit trouvée et rendue.
not itself can lose any thing which not be found and rendered
Si qu'en alant, le seigneur, en ceste voie, droit vers la mer
So that-in going the lord on this way straight toward the sea
ocianne, où il a, de chemin, deux journées de sa maistre
ocean where it there-is of road two day-journeys from his master
cité de Cambaluc, si comme je vous ai dit, jusques là puet on
city of Khanbaliq so as I to-you have said as-far-as there can one

veoir de moult belles choses, et de moult beaus oiselez assez à
see of very fine things and of very fine fowling plenty in
grant planté, qu'il n'a delit ou monde qui ce vaille.
great plenty so-that-there not-is delight in-the world which this may-be-worth
Et le grant Sire vait sus quatre olifans, sus quoi a fait
And the great Lord goes upon four elephants upon which he-has made
moult belle chambre de fust, qui est, dedens, toute couverte
very fine chamber of wood which is within all covered
de draps à or batuz; et dehors est couverte de cuir de
with cloths of gold beaten and outside is covered with hide of
lyons. Et il tient toute fois o lui laiens douze jerfaus des
lions And he keeps all times with him in-there twelve gerfalcons of-the
meilleurs que il ait. Et sont o lui aussi pluseurs barons qui
best that he have And are with him also several barons who
li tiennent compaignie. Et aucune fois alant, le seigneur,
to-him keep company And some time going the lord
en sa chambre, et parlant à ses barons, qui li vont
in his chamber and speaking to his barons who to-him go
aussi entour moult pres à cheval, li diront: «Sire, grues
also around very near on horse to-him will-say Lord cranes
passent!» Et il, de maintenant, fait descouvrir sa chambre,
pass And he from at-once makes uncover his chamber
et les voit; et prent lequel jerfaut qu'il li plaist et
and them sees and takes which gerfalcon that-it to-him pleases and
le laisse aler, et pluseurs fois les prent et abat devant
it lets go and several times them it-takes and strikes-down before
lui; si que il a trop grant soulaz et trop grant joie, seant
him so that he has very great solace and very great joy sitting
toutes fois en sa chambre apuiant sur son lit; et tuit li
all times in his chamber leaning upon his bed and all the
baron qui li sont entour aussi. Si que je vous di bien
barons who to-him are around also So that I to-you tell well

en verité que onques ne fu ne ne sera, je croi, qui si
in truth that ever not was nor not will-be I believe one-who so
grant soulaz ne deduit puisse avoir en cest monde comme
great solace nor delight could have in this world as
cestui a; ni qui miex en eust le povoir de faire le.
this-one has nor who better thereof had the power of doing it

Et quant il est tant alez que il est venuz en un lieu qui est
And when he is so-far gone that he is come to a place which is
Cacciar Modun, si treuve illec tendus ses paveillons, et de ses
Cachar Modun so he-finds there pitched his pavilions and of his
filz, et de ses barons, et de ses amies, et des leur qui bien
sons and of his barons and of his friends and of-the theirs which fully
sont dix mille beaus et riches. Et vous deviserai comment son
are ten thousand fine and rich And to-you I-will-describe how his
paveillon est fait. La tente, là où il tient sa court, est bien
pavilion is made The tent there where he holds his court is fully
si grande que il demourroit dessouz bien mille personnes
so great that there would-dwell beneath fully thousand persons
largement. Ceste tente a sa porte vers midi; si que en ceste
amply This tent has its door toward south so that in this
sale demeurent les barons et les chevaliers; et en une autre qui
hall dwell the barons and the knights and in an other which
se tient avec ceste, qui est vers ponent, demeure, le seigneur.
itself holds with this-one which is toward west dwells the lord
Quant il veult parler à aucuns, si l'envoie querre laiens.
When he wishes to-speak to someone so him-he-sends seek in-there

Et derriere la grant sale, si a une chambre là où dort
And behind the great hall so there-is a chamber there where sleeps
le seigneur. Et encore y a autres tentes et chambres, mais
the lord And further there are other tents and chambers but

non pas qu'elles se tiennent avec la grant. Et sont faites,
not at-all that-they themselves hold with the great-one And are made
ces deux sales et la chambre là où il dort en ceste maniere.
these two halls and the chamber there where he sleeps in this manner
Chascune des sales si a trois coulombes de fust, de pieces
Each of-the halls so has three columns of wood of pieces
moult bien encuierées de beau cuir de lyon, vergie de
very well covered-with-leather with fine hide of lion striped with
noir et de blanc et de vermeil; si que pluie ne vent ne leur
black and with white and with vermilion so that rain nor wind not them
puet nuire. Encor sont ces deux granz sales, et la chambre
can harm Further are these two great halls and the chamber
là où il dort, que je vous ai conté, toutes aussi couvertes
there where he sleeps which I to-you have told all also covered
dehors de piaus de lyons vergiez, si comme dit est dessus,
outside with skins of lions striped so as said is above
qui dure à touz temps. Et par dedens sont toutes fourrées
which lasts for all times And by within they-are all furred
d'ermeline, par dedens, et de sebelin; car ce sont, andeus,
with-ermine by within and with sable for these are both
les pennes de plus grant vaillance et les plus belles qui
the furs of more great worth and the most fine which
soient. Car une penne de sebelin vaudroit bien, la forreure
be For a fur of sable would-be-worth fully the lining
d'une robe, deux mille livres d'or, ou au mains mille. Et
of-a robe two thousand pounds of-gold or at-the least thousand And
l'appellent, les Tatars, les roys des pennes. Si que, de ces
it-call the Tartars the kings of-the furs So that with these
deux pennes que je vous ai dit, sont fourrées et entaillies si
two furs which I to-you have said are furred and cut so
soutilment, que c'est une deité à veoir. Et toutes les cordes
subtly that it-is a delight to see And all the cords

qui les tiennent sont toutes de soie. Si que je vous di, en
which them hold are all of silk So that I to-you tell in
verité, que ces tentes: ce sont les deux sales et la chambre,
truth that these tents this are the two halls and the chamber
sont de si grant vaillance que un roys ne les pourroit paier.
are of so great worth that a king not them could pay

Et tout environ ces tentes, si sont les autres tentes moult
And all around these tents so are the other tents very
bien mises et belles, là où sont les armes du seigneur et
well placed and fine there where are the arms of-the lord and
les autres genz. Et puis encore a autres tentes là où
the other people And then further there-are other tents there where
sont les oiseaux, et ceus qui les gardent. Si qu'il y a si
are the birds and those who them guard So that-it there is so
grant quantité de tentes de toutes manieres en ce champ que
great quantity of tents of all manners in this field that
c'est merveilles. Car ce samble une bonne cité pour la quantité
it-is marvels For this seems a good city for the quantity
de gent qu'il y a et qui viennent chascun jour de toutes
of people that-it there is and who come each day from all
pars. Car il y a mires, astronomiens, fauconniers, et de
parts For it there is physicians astrologers falconers and of
touz autres mestiers besongnables à si grant gent. Et encore
all other crafts needful to so great people And further
que chascun est avec sa mesnie; car ainssi est leur usage.
that each is with his household for thus is their usage

Et demeure ainssi, le seigneur, en cel lieu, jusques à la
And dwells thus the lord in that place until to the
prime voile. Et en tout ce temps ne fait autre chose que
first spring And in all this time not he-does other thing than
oiseler là environ, et par lacs, et par rivières, que moult
fowl there around and by lakes and by rivers for many

en y a, et de belles contrées où il a grues et
thereof there are and of fine countries where it there-are cranes and
sesnes, et toutes manieres d'autres oiseaus. Et aussi toute
swans and all manners of-other birds And also all
l'autre gent d'environ ne finent de chacier et d'oiseler. Et
the-other people of-around not cease of hunting and of-fowling And
li portent, chascun jour, grant quantité de venoison et
to-him they-bring each day great quantity of venison and
d'oiseaus de toutes manieres à grant plenté. Si que il en y
of-birds of all manners in great plenty So that it thereof there
a tant et à si grant plenté et en ont si grant soulaz
is so-much and in so great plenty and thereof they-have so great solace
et deduit, demourant là, que c'est une merveille à conter,
and delight dwelling there that it-is a marvel to tell
pour ce que ceuls qui ce n'ont veu ne le pourroient croire.
for this that those who this not-have seen not it could believe
Et si vous di bien une autre chose: que nulle personne,
And so to-you I-tell well an other thing that any person
qui que il soit, n'ose tenir nul oisel pour son delit
whoever that he be not-dares keep any bird for his delight
d'oiseler, ne chiens pour chacier à vingt journées d'icelui
of-fowling nor dogs for to-hunt within twenty day-journeys of-that
lieu. Mais en toutes autres parties puet chascuns tenir ce que
place But in all other parts can each keep that which
il veult. Et encore; qu'en toutes les terres du seigneur n'ose
he wishes And further that-in all the lands of-the lord not-dares
nulz, tant soit hardis, qui que il soit, de prendre nulles
anyone so be-he bold whoever that he be to take any
de ces quatre manieres de bestes: c'est lievre, cerf, chevrel,
of these four manners of beasts this-is hare stag roebuck
et biche. C'est du mois de mars jusques à octembre. Et
and hind This-is from-the month of March until to October And

qui contre ce feroit, il seroit honnis. Mais il sont genz si
who against this would-do he would-be shamed But they are people so
obeissans au commandement du seigneur, qu'en alant par
obedient to-the command of-the lord that-in going by
voie, il les treuvent dormant; et si ne les toucheroient
way they them find sleeping and so not them they-would-touch
pour riens du monde. Si que il multeplient si que toute
for anything of-the world So that they multiply so that all
la terre en est plaine, et en a tant le seigneur comme
the land thereof is full and thereof has so-many the lord as
il veut. Mais passé ce terme que je vous ai dit: de mars
he wishes But passed this term which I to-you have said from March
jusques à octembre, en puet chascuns prendre à sa volenté.
until to October thereof can each take at his will

Et quant le seigneur a demouré de mars jusques à
And when the lord has dwelt from March until to
demi may en cest lieu, à si grant soulaz, comme je vous
mid May in this place in so great solace as I to-you
ai conté et dit; si s'en part avec toutes ses genz,
have told and said so himself-thence he-departs with all his people
et s'en torne tout droit par la voie de là où il
and himself-thence turns all straight by the way from there where he
vint, et s'en vait à sa maistre cité de Cambaluc, qui
came and himself-thence goes to his master city of Khanbaliq which
est du Catay la maistre cité; si comme vous avez ouy. Et
is of-the Cathay the master city so as you have heard And
toutes fois en vient chassant et oiselant à grant delit.
all times thereof he-comes hunting and fowling with great delight

Back from the hunt in May, the Khan holds court three days at Khanbaliq and goes to Shangdu for the summer, returning at the end of August, and so divides his year between his city, the hunt, and his palace of canes. Khanbaliq has twelve suburbs, more populous than the city, where merchants and foreigners lodge and twenty thousand harlots live; no one may be buried inside the walls. More rich goods come there than to any city in the world, a thousand cartloads of silk a day, and two hundred cities around send their merchants to trade.

93 Comment le grant Kaan tient grant court quant il est
How the great Khan holds great court when he is
retournez d'oiseler et fait grant feste.
returned from-fowling and makes great feast

Et quant il est venuz en sa maistre cité de Cambaluc,
And when he is come into his master city of Khanbaliq
si demeure en son palais trois jours et riens plus. Et
so he-dwells in his palace three days and nothing more And
tient grant feste et tient moult grant court, et maine
holds great feast and holds very great court and leads
moult grant joie, et grant soulaz avec ses femmes. Et puis
very great joy and great solace with his wives And then
s'empart de son palais de Cambaluc et s'en vait
himself-thence-departs from his palace of Khanbaliq and himself-thence goes
en la cité que il fit faire, si comme je vous ai conté ça
to the city which he had made so as I to-you have told here
en arriere, qui a nom Ciandu, en laquelle a si grant
in back which has name Shangdu in which there-is so great
praerie et son palais de cane où il tient ses jerfaus en
meadow and his palace of cane where he keeps his gerfalcons in
mue. Et demoure là l'esté pour le chaut; car celui lieu
mew And he-dwells there the-summer for the heat for that place

est moult froiz. Si que il demeure là du premier jour de
is very cool So that he dwells there from-the first day of
may jusques à vingt huit jours d'aoust que il se part de
May until to twenty eight days of-August that he himself departs from
là, quant il fait espandre le lait de ses jumens blanches, si
there when he has spilled the milk of his mares white so
comme je vous ai dit ça arriere. Et s'en vient arriere
as I to-you have said here back And himself-thence comes back
à sa maistre cité de Cambaluc. Et là demeure, si comme je
to his master city of Khanbaliq And there dwells so as I
vous ai dit, le mois de septembre, pour faire la feste de
to-you have said the month of September for to-make the feast of
sa nativité; et puis octembre, novembre et decembre, janvier
his nativity and then October November and December January
et fevrier, ouquel mois de fevrier, il fait la grant feste de
and February in-which month of February he makes the great feast of
leur premier jour d'an, que il appellent: «la feste blanche,»
their first day of-year which they call the feast white
si comme je vous ai conté çà arriere tout apertement par
so as I to-you have told here back all openly by
ordre. Et puis se part et s'en vait vers la mer
order And then himself he-departs and himself-thence goes toward the sea
occeane chaiçant et oiselant, si comme je vous ai conté,
ocean hunting and fowling so as I to-you have told
du premier jour de mars jusques à demi may, que il
from-the first day of March until to mid May that he
tourne à sa maistre cité trois jours; si comme dit est dessus,
returns to his master city three days so as said is above
es quelz trois jours il fait grant feste avec ses femmes
in which three days he makes great feast with his wives
et tient grant court et grant soulaz. Car je vous di que
and holds great court and great solace For I to-you tell that

c'est merveilleuse chose à veoir la grant solempnité que le
it-is marvelous thing to see the great solemnity which the
seigneur fait en ces trois jours. Puis se part si comme
lord makes in these three days Then himself he-departs so as
je vous ai dit; si que il demeure tout l'an ensi parti: six
I to-you have said so that he dwells all the-year thus divided six
mois en sa maistre cité de Cambaluc, en son maistre palais:
months in his master city of Khanbaliq in his master palace
c'est septembre, octembre, novembre, janvier, fevrier; et puis
this-is September October November January February and then
se part pour aler à la grant chace sus la mer, et
himself departs for to-go to the great hunt upon the sea and
demeure mars, avril, may; et puis tourne à son palais de
dwells March April May and then returns to his palace of
Cambaluc, et demeure trois jours. Et puis s'en vait à
Khanbaliq and dwells three days And then himself-thence goes to
sa cité de Ciandu que il fist faire là où est son palais de
his city of Shangdu which he had made there where is his palace of
canes, et demeure juing, juignet, aoust; et puis s'en
canes and dwells June July August and then himself-thence
tourne à sa maistre cité de Cambaluc arriere. Et ainsi fait
turns to his master city of Khanbaliq back And thus he-does
tout l'an: six moys en sa cité, et trois moys en la chace,
all the-year six months in his city and three months in the hunt
et trois moys en son palais de canes pour le chaut. Si que
and three months in his palace of canes for the heat So that
il maine sa vie à moult grant delit, saus aucune fois que
he leads his life with very great delight save some time that
il vait autre part de çà et de là soulassant à son plaisir.
he goes other part from here and from there solacing at his pleasure

Ci dist de la cité de Cambaluc; comment elle est de 94
Here tells of the city of Khanbaliq how it is of
grant afaire et pleine de genz.
great affair and full of people

Sachiez que la cité de Cambaluc a si grant multitude
Know that the city of Khanbaliq has so great multitude
de maisons, et de genz et dedens la ville, et dehors,
of houses and of people both within the town and outside
que ce samble estre impossible chose; car il y a autant
that it seems to-be impossible thing for it there is as-many
de bours que de portes. Ce sont douze qui sont moult
of suburbs as of gates These are twelve which are very
grans, esquels fors bours a plus de gent que dedens
great in-which outer suburbs there-is more of people than within
la cité. Et en ces bours demeurent et herbergent les
the city And in these suburbs dwell and lodge the
marchans et les forestiers cheminans que il en y a
merchants and the strangers traveling for it thereof there is
assez de toutes pars pour porter choses au Seigneur (en)
plenty from all parts for to-carry things to-the Lord in
present et por vendre à la cour; si que il a autant de
present and for to-sell at the court so that it there-is as-many of
bonnes maisons dehors la ville que dedens, sans celles des
good houses outside the town as within without those of-the
granz seigneurs et des barons qui sont en grant quantité.
great lords and of-the barons who are in great quantity

Sachiez que dedens la ville n'en ose ensevelir nul corps
Know that within the town not-one dares bury any body
mort; car se il est idolatre il est porté ardoir dehors la
dead for if he is idolater he is carried to-burn outside the
ville et les fors bours, en un lieu loing qui est ordené à
town and the outer suburbs in a place far which is ordained for

ce faire. Et se il est d'autre loy qui se cuevre sous terre,
this to-do And if he is of-other law who himself covers under earth
si comme crestien et sarrazin, et autre maniere de gent:
so as Christian and Saracen and other manner of people
si le portent aussi dehors touz les bours, loins, en un lieu
so him they-carry also outside all the suburbs far in a place
ordené; si que la terre en vaut miex et est plus saine.
ordained so that the earth thereof is-worth better and is more healthy

Encore que nulle fame pecheresse de son corps ne demeure
Further that any woman sinner of her body not dwells
dedens la ville, mais demeurent dehors par les bours. Et
within the town but they-dwell outside through the suburbs And
si vous di qu'il en y a tant pour les genz forains qui
so to-you I-tell that-it thereof there is so-many for the people foreign who
y sont à grant plenté que c'est merveille. Car je vous di
there are in great plenty that it-is marvel For I to-you tell
pour certain qu'elles sont plus de vingt mille qui font pour
for certain that-they are more than twenty thousand who do for
monnoie de leur corps. Et trestouz treuvent à gaaignier, si
money of their body And all find to gain so
que bien povez veoir se il y a grant habondance de gent.
that well you-can see if it there is great abundance of people
Et si vous di que en ceste cité vient plus de chieres
And so to-you I-tell that into this city comes more of dear
choses et de greigneur vaillance, et d'estranges, que en
things and of greater worth and of-strange-ones than in
cité qui soit ou monde, et greigneur quantité de toutes
city which be in-the world and greater quantity of all
choses. Car chascun en y porte de chascune part, que
things For each thereof there carries from each part what
pour le Seigneur, que pour la court, que pour la cité qui
for the Lord what for the court what for the city which

est si grant, que pour les barons et les chevaliers dont
is so great what for the barons and the knights of-which
il y a tant, que pour les granz osts du Seigneur qui
it there is so-many what for the great hosts of-the Lord which
demourent là entour; que pour la court, que pour la cité;
dwell there around what for the court what for the city
que pour un, que pour autre. Si que il en vient tant
what for one what for other So that it thereof comes so-much
que c'est sans fin de toutes choses; qu'il n'est jour en
that it-is without end of all things so-that-there not-is day in
l'an que, de soie seulement, n'y entre mille charretées
the-year that of silk only not-there enter thousand cartloads
en ceste cité, de quoy mainz draps à or et de soie
into this city of which many cloths of gold and of silk
se labourent et pluseurs autres choses. Et ce n'est pas
themselves work and several other things And this not-is at-all
merveilles; car en toutes les contrées de là entour n'a
marvels for in all the countries of there around not-there-is
point de lin, si que il convient faire toutes choses de
whit of linen so that it behooves make all things of
soie. Et bien est voirs que il ont en aucun lieu coton et
silk And well is true that they have in some place cotton and
chanvre; mais non pas tant que il leur souffise; mais il
hemp but not at-all so-much that it to-them suffice but they
n'en font force, pour la grant quantité que il ont de
not-thereof make force for the great quantity which they have of
soie, et à bon marchié, qui vaut miex que lin ne coton.
silk and at good market which is-worth better than linen nor cotton

Entour ceste grant cité de Cambaluc a bien deux
Around this great city of Khanbaliq there-are fully two
cents cités ou environ, les unes plus près que les autres;
hundred cities or about the ones more near than the others

que de chascunes en vient marchans pour vendre leur
for from each-ones thereof come merchants for to-sell their
choses et acheter des autres pour leur Seigneur. Et tout
things and buy of-the others for their Lord And all
treuvent à vendre leur marchandises et acheter des autres;
find to sell their merchandises and buy of-the others
si que elle est cité de moult grant marchandise.
so that it is city of very great merchandise

Or depuis que je vous ai monstré tout appertement la
Now since that I to-you have shown all openly the
noblesce de ceste cité du Seigneur, si vous dirai encore
nobleness of this city of-the Lord so to-you I-will-tell further
la Seque que le Seigneur a en ceste cité mesmes, en
the Mint which the Lord has in this city same in
laquelle il fait batre et coignier sa monnoie; ainsi comme
which he has struck and coined his money thus as
je vous deviserai et vous monstrerai clerement comment
I to-you will-describe and to-you will-show clearly how
le grant Sire puet assez plus faire que je ne vous ay
the great Lord can much more do than I — to-you have
dit, ne ne dirai en cest livre; car il ne se porroit dire
said nor — will-say in this book for it not itself could say
si que vous en serez content que je di voir et raison.
so that you thereof will-be content that I tell truth and reason

At the Mint of Khanbaliq the Khan has, as it were, the alchemist's secret: he has the inner bark of mulberry trees made into black sheets like paper, cut into notes from half a tornesel to ten golden bezants, and sealed with his seal. He pays with them everywhere, and no one dares refuse them on pain of death. Merchants must sell their gold, silver, stones, and pearls to his twelve appraising barons for notes, and anyone who needs gold buys it with them, so the Khan holds more treasure than anyone in the world.

Comment le grant Kaan fait despendre pour monnoie 95
How the great Khan makes spend for money
escorce d'arbres qui semblent chartretes, par tout son pais.
bark of-trees which seem little-charters through all his country
Il est voirs que en ceste cité de Cambaluc est la Seque
It is true that in this city of Khanbaliq is the Mint
du grant Sire; et est establie en tel maniere que l'en
of-the great Lord and it-is established in such manner that one
puet bien dire que le grant Sire ait l'arquenne parfaitement
can well say that the great Lord have the-alchemy perfectly
et selon raison; car il fait faire une tel monnoie comme
and according-to reason for he has made a such money as
je vous diray; que il fait prendre escorces d'arbres: c'est
I to-you will-tell for he has taken barks of-trees this-is
de mouriers dont les vers qui menjuent les feuilles font la
of mulberries whose the worms which eat the leaves make the
soie. Car il en y a tant que toutes les contrées en
silk For it thereof there is so-many that all the countries thereof
sont chargiées et plaines de ces diz arbres. Et prennent une
are laden and full of these said trees And they-take a
escorce soustil qui est entre le fust de l'arbre et l'escorce
bark fine which is between the wood of the-tree and the-bark

grosse dehors; et est blanche. Et de ceste escorce soustil
thick outside and it-is white And of this bark fine
comme papier le font tuite noires. Et quant ces chartretes
like paper it they-make all black And when these little-charters
sont faites, si les font tranchier en tel manière. La
are made so them they-have cut in such manner The
mendre vaut demi-tonsel; et l'autre, un peu greigneur, si
least is-worth half-tornesel and the-other a little greater so
vaut .i. tounesel; et l'autre, un peu greigneur, vaut demi
is-worth one tornesel and the-other a little greater is-worth half
gros venisien d'argent; et l'autre .i. venissien gros d'argent.
groat Venetian of-silver and the-other one Venetian groat of-silver
Et l'autre vaut .v. gros, et l'autre .vi. gros, et l'autre .x.
And the-other is-worth five groats and the-other six groats and the-other ten
gros. Et l'autre .i. besant d'or; et l'autre .ij. besans d'or;
groats And the-other one bezant of-gold and the-other two bezants of-gold
et l'autre .iij. besans d'or; et l'autre .iiij. besans, et l'autre
and the-other three bezants of-gold and the-other four bezants and the-other
.v. Et ainsi vont jusqu'a .x. besans d'or. Et toutes ces
five And thus they-go as-far-as-to ten bezants of-gold And all these
chartretes sont sellées du seel du Seigneur. Et ainssi
little-charters are sealed with-the seal of-the Lord And thus
en fait faire si grant quantité chascun an, qui riens
thereof he-has made so great quantity each year which anything
ne li couste, que pairoient tout le tresor du monde.
not to-him costs that would-pay all the treasure of-the world

Et quant ces chartretes sont faites en la maniere que je
And when these little-charters are made in the manner which I
vous ai conté, si en fait faire touz ses paiemens. Et
to-you have told so therewith he-has made all his payments And
les fait despendre à chascun par toutes ses provinces, et
them he-has spent by each through all his provinces and

par tous ses regnes, et par toutes ses terres, et partout
through all his realms and through all his lands and everywhere
où il a povoir ne seigneurie. Et nus, si chier comme il
where he has power nor lordship And anyone so dear as he
s'aime, ne les ose refuser; car il seroit, de maintenant,
himself-loves not them dares refuse for he would-be from at-once
mis à mort. Et vous di que chascun les prent volentiers,
put to death And to-you I-tell that each them takes willingly
pour ce que là où il vont, sous la seigneurie du
for this that there where they go under the lordship of-the
grant Kaan, les despendent et font leur paiemens des
great Khan them they-spend and make their payments of-the
marchandises que il achatent et vendent, aussi bien comme
merchandises which they buy and sell as well as
se il feussent de fin or. Et encores que elles sont si
if they were of fine gold And further that they are so
legieres que, ce qui vaut .x. besans d'or, ne poisse pas .i.
light that that which is-worth ten bezants of-gold not weighs at-all one
Et encore sachiez que touz les marchans qui viennent
And further know that all the merchants who come
d'Ynde, ou d'autres pais, qui portent or ou argent, ou
from-India or from-other countries who carry gold or silver or
pierres ou pelles ne les osent vendre à nul autre, en ceste
stones or pearls not them dare sell to any other in this
cité, qu'au Seigneur. Et il a douze barons esleus sur ce,
city than-to-the Lord And he has twelve barons chosen over this
sages hommes et congnoissans de ce faire; si que ceus les
wise men and knowing of this to-do so that those them
prisent, et le Seigneur les fait paier bien largement de ces
appraise and the Lord them has paid very amply with these
chartretes. Et eus les prennent moult volentiers; car il ne
little-charters And they them take very willingly for they not

trouveroient pas tant, de nisun autre; et l'autre est pour
would-find at-all so-much from any other and the-other is for
ce que il sont paiés dès maintenant. Et encore que il
this that they are paid from at-once And further that they
puent avoir pour cette monnoie tout quanque il veulent
can have for this money all whatever they wish
partout; et est aussi plus legiere à porter par chemin. Si
everywhere and it-is also more light to carry by road So
que le Seigneur en achate tant chascun an, que c'est sans
that the Lord thereof buys so-much each year that it-is without
fin son tresor; et les paie de chose qui riens ne li
end his treasure and them pays with thing which anything not to-him
couste, si comme vous avez entendu. Et encore que pluseurs
costs so as you have heard And further that several
fois, en l'an, vait son ban par la cité: que chascuns
times in the-year goes his proclamation through the city that each
qui avera or, ou argent, ou pierres, ou pelles les porte à
who will-have gold or silver or stones or pearls them carry to
la seque, et il les fera bien païer et largement. Si que
the mint and he them will-have well paid and amply So that
il les portent volentiers, pour ce que il ne trouveroient
they them carry willingly for this that they not would-find
pas qui tant leur en donnast. Et en portent tant
at-all one-who so-much to-them thereof should-give And thereof they-carry so-much
que c'est merveilles. Et qui ne les veult porter, si demeure.
that it-is marvels And who not them wishes to-carry so he-remains
Si que en ceste maniere a tout le tresor de ses terres.
So that in this manner he-has all the treasure of his lands

Et quant aucunes de ces chartretes est gastée, non pour quant
And when any of these little-charters is spoiled not for so-much
sont elles nient durables, si les portent à la Seque, et en
are they not-at-all durable so them they-carry to the Mint and thereof

laissent iij. du .c. (trois du cent) de change; si prennent
leave three of-the hundred three of-the hundred of exchange so they-take
neuves. Encore se autre baron, ou autre personne, qui qu'il fust,
new-ones Further if other baron or other person who that-he were
eust mestier d'or ou d'argent, ou de pierres, ou de pelles, pour
had need of-gold or of-silver or of stones or of pearls for
faire vessellemente ou autres riches choses, si vait à la Seque
to-make plate or other rich things so he-goes to the Mint
et achate tant comme il veult, et paie de ces chartretes.
and buys as-much as he wishes and pays with these little-charters

Or vous ai conté la maniere et la raison pourquoy
Now to-you I-have told the manner and the reason why
le grant Sire doit avoir, et a plus de tresor que tous
the great Lord must have and has more of treasure than all
ceus du monde, dont vous avez bien ouy et entendu
those of-the world of-which you have well heard and understood
comment, et la maniere. Si vous deviserai ore les grans
how and the manner So to-you I-will-describe now the great
seigneuries qui de ceste cité issent pour le grant Sire.
lordships which from this city issue for the great Lord

Twelve great barons in one palace at Khanbaliq govern the thirty-four provinces of the empire, choose their lords, and send the hosts where they are needed; they are called the Sheng, the greater court. From Khanbaliq roads go to every province, and every twenty-five miles stands a post station with a palace and four hundred horses for the Khan's envoys, three hundred thousand horses in all. Between them, every three miles, runners with belts of bells carry messages ten days' distance in a day and a night, and riders cover two hundred and fifty miles a day.

96 Ci devise des .xii. barons qui sont sus toutes les choses
Here describes of-the twelve barons who are over all the things
du grant Kaan.
of-the great Khan

Et sachiez que le grant Kaan a esleu douze grans barons
And know that the great Khan has chosen twelve great barons
ausquiels il a commis que il soient sur toutes les choses
to-whom he has committed that they be over all the things
besongnables qu'il convient et besongne a .xxxiiij. grans
needful which-it behooves and is-needful to thirty-four great
provinces. Et vous dirai leur maniere et leur establissemenz.
provinces And to-you I-will-tell their manner and their establishments

Sachiez tout vraiement que ces douze barons demeurent
Know all truly that these twelve barons dwell
tout ensemble en un moult beau palais et riche, qui est
all together in a very fine palace and rich which is
dedens la cité de Cambaluc; et a pluseurs chambres
within the city of Khanbaliq and it-has several chambers
et pluseurs palais. Et chascune province si a un juge et
and several palaces And each province so has a judge and
pluseurs escrivains; et tuit demeurent en ce palais, chascun
several scribes and all dwell in this palace each

en sa maison par soy. Et cestui juge et ses escrivains si
in his house by himself And this judge and his scribes so
font toutes les choses qui besoignent à la province à qui
do all the things which are-needful to the province to which
il sont député; et c'est par le commandement des douze
they are deputed and this-is by the command of-the twelve
barons. Et encor plus; quant le fait est grief il le font
barons And further more when the matter is grave they it make
savoir, ces douze barons, au Seigneur. Et puis fait ce que
know these twelve barons to-the Lord And then he-does that which
li semble le miex. Mais ces douze barons ont si grant
to-him seems the best But these twelve barons have so great
seigneurie que il eslisent les seigneurs de toutes ces .xxxiiij.
lordship that they choose the lords of all these thirty-four
grans provinces que je vous ai ci dit. Et quant il sont
great provinces which I to-you have here said And when they are
esleu, tel qu'il leur semblent qu'il soit bon et souffisant,
chosen such that-they to-them seem that-he be good and sufficient
si le font savoir au Seigneur. Et il les conferme et
so it they-make know to-the Lord And he them confirms and
leur fait donner table d'or, telle comme à sa seigneurie
to-them has given tablet of-gold such as to his lordship
appartient. Et encore ont tant de seigneurie, ces douze
belongs And further they-have so-much of lordship these twelve
barons, que il pourvoient où il convient que les osts
barons that they provide where it behooves that the hosts
voisent. Et les envoient là où il semble que mestier en
go And them they-send there where it seems that need thereof
soit, ou telle quantité comme a besoing. Mais toutefois
be or such quantity as there-is need But always
est à la seue du Seigneur; mais il en font ce que
it-is at the knowledge of-the Lord but they thereof do that which

il veulent, et sont appellé: scieng, qui vaut à dire: «la
they wish and are called sheng which is-worth to say the
Court greigneur.» Le palais là où il demeurent est aussi
Court greater The palace there where they dwell is also
appelez «la Court greigneur». Et c'est bien la greigneur
called the Court greater And this-is well the greatest
seigneurie qui soit en la court du grant Sire; car bien
lordship which be in the court of-the great Lord for well
ont le pooir de faire du bien à qui il veulent. Les
they-have the power of doing of-the good to whom they wish The
.xxxiiij. provinces ne vous conterai pas ores par nom, pour
thirty-four provinces not to-you I-will-tell at-all now by name for
ce que je les vous conterai en notre livre appertement.
this that I them to-you will-tell in our book openly

Or vous lairons à conter de ce et vous conterons
Now you we-will-leave to tell of this and to-you will-tell
comment le grant Sire envoie ses messages et ses courssiers;
how the great Lord sends his envoys and his couriers
et comment il ont les chevaus appareilliez pour tost aler.
and how they have the horses made-ready for quickly to-go

97 Comment de Cambalu se partent ses messagiers et
How from Khanbaliq themselves depart his messengers and
coursiers et vont par maintes terres et provinces.
couriers and go through many lands and provinces

Or sachiez vraiement que de ceste cité de Cambaluc
Now know truly that from this city of Khanbaliq
se partent moult de voies et de chemins lesquelz vont
themselves depart many of ways and of roads which go
par maintes provinces; c'est à dire que l'un chemin va à
through many provinces this-is to say that the-one road goes to
tel province, et l'autre à tel. Et a ainsi chascun chemin
such province and the-other to such And has thus each road

le nom de la province là où il vait; mais il est moult
the name of the province there where it goes but it is very
celé. Et quant l'en se part de Cambaluc, par laquele
concealed And when one himself departs from Khanbaliq by whichever
voie que l'en veult, et l'en a alé .xxv. milles, si treuvent
way that one wishes and one has gone twenty-five miles so find
les messages du seigneur, une poeste que il appellent
the envoys of-the lord a post-station which they call
iamb; et nous disons: «poeste de chevaus». Et en celle
yamb and we say post of horses And in that
poeste là où vont les messages, si a un beau palais,
post-station there where go the envoys so there-is a fine palace
et grant et riche, là où il herbergent; et sont plaines,
and great and rich there where they lodge and are full
les chambres, de riches liz moult beaus et bien fournis de
the chambers of rich beds very fine and well furnished with
tout ce qui leur besoigne avec riches draps de soie; et
all that which to-them is-needful with rich cloths of silk and
ont tout ce que à message affiert. Et se uns roys y
they-have all that which to envoy befits And if a king there
venist, si seroit il bien herbergiez. Et si treuve l'en, en ces
came so would-be he well lodged And so finds one in these
poestes, bien quatre cenz chevaus par chascune. Et de telle
post-stations fully four hundred horses by each And of such
il y a deux cenz, selonc ce que il besoigne plus à
it there is two hundred according-to that which it is-needful more to
l'un qu'à l'autre; si comme le grant Sire a establi qu'il
the-one than-to the-other so as the great Lord has established that-it
besoingne et que toutes fois demeurent, et sont appareilliez
is-needful and that all times they-remain and are made-ready
pour ses messages, quant il les envoie en aucune part. Et
for his envoys when he them sends into some part And

sachiez que à .xxv. milles ou à .xxx. a, toutesvoies,
know that at twenty-five miles or at thirty there-is always
une de ces poestes, si garnies, comme je vous ai dit; mais
one of these post-stations so furnished as I to-you have said but
ce est en toutes les principaus voies qui vont aus provinces
this is on all the principal ways which go to-the provinces
que je vous ai dit; si que en ceste maniere vait par
which I to-you have said so that in this manner it-goes through
toutes les principaus provinces du grant Kaan. Et quant les
all the principal provinces of-the great Khan And when the
messagiers vont par aucun autre lieu desvoiable qu'il ne
messengers go through some other place out-of-the-way so-that-he not
treuve ne maisons ne herbergerie, si fait faire, le seigneur,
finds nor houses nor lodging so has made the lord
aussi ne plus ne mains les poestes comme je vous ai
also nor more nor less the post-stations as I to-you have
dit, sauz ce, qu'il convient chevauchier plus granz journées;
said save this that-it behooves ride more great day-journeys
car les autres sont de .xx. à .xxx. milles l'une loing de
for the others are from twenty to thirty miles the-one far from
l'autre. Et si sont de .xxxv. à .xlv. milles, et sont
the-other And so they-are from thirty-five to forty-five miles and are
aussi appareilliez comme les autres de tout quanque besoing
also made-ready as the others with all whatever need
leur est, et de chevaus et de toutes autres choses, à
to-them is and with horses and with all other things to
ce que les messages du seigneur, qui vont et viennent,
this that the envoys of-the lord who go and come
aient leur fournement à leur plaisir, de quelconques païs
may-have their furnishing at their pleasure from whatever country
il viennent. Et certes ce est bien la greigneur hautesce,
they come And certainly this is well the greatest loftiness

et la greigneur grandesse qui fust onques oïe ne veue.
and the greatest grandeur which was ever heard nor seen
Onques nul Empereour, ne nul roy, ne nul seigneur n'ot
Ever any Emperor nor any king nor any lord not-had
tel richesse. Car sachiez en vérité, que plus de trois cenz
such richness For know in truth that more than three hundred
mille chevaus demeurent en ces poestes proprement pour
thousand horses remain in these post-stations especially for
ses messages. Et encore que les palais qui sont plus de
his envoys And further that the palaces which are more than
dix mille, sont tuit si fourni de riches hernois comme
ten thousand are all so furnished with rich harness as
je vous ai conté. Et c'est chose si merveilleuse et de si
I to-you have told And this-is thing so marvelous and of so
grant vaillance que à paine se porroit compter ne escrire.
great worth that with pain itself could tell nor write
Encore vous conterai je une autre chose que je avoie oubliée,
Further to-you will-tell I an other thing which I had forgotten
qui bien fait à conter en ceste matiere. Sachiez que encore
which well is-fit to tell in this matter Know that further
a ordené, le grant Kaan, et ainsi est fait, que entre
has ordained the great Khan and thus it-is done that between
l'une poeste et l'autre, ouquel chemin que ce soit, si,
the-one post-station and the-other on-whichever road that it be so
à chascune trois milles, a un petit chastiau où il puet
at each three miles there-is a little castle where it can
avoir entour .xl. maisons esquelles demeurent hommes à pié
there-be around forty houses in-which dwell men on foot
qui encore font messageries du grant Sire en ceste maniere.
who further do messages of-the great Lord in this manner
Chascun porte une çainture grant et large, toute plaine de
Each wears a belt great and wide all full of

campanelles, à ce que, quant il vont, que il soient bien
little-bells to this that when they go that they be well
oïs de loings; et vont toutesvoies courant le grant cours
heard from far and they-go always running the great course
jusques à l'autre casau, où il a trois milles. Et cil de
as-far-as to the-other hamlet where it there-is three miles And those from
maintenant auront appareillie un autre homme, si fourni de
at-once will-have made-ready an other man so furnished with
campanelles, comme celui que il auront appareillie avant
little-bells as he whom they will-have made-ready before
la venue de lui, pour ce qu'il l'auront senti venir aus
the coming of him for this that-they him-will-have heard come by-the
campanelles. Et tantost que celui est joint, l'autre prent ce
little-bells And as-soon that he is joined the-other takes that
qu'il li aporte, et prent une petite chartrete que li
which-he to-him brings and takes a little charter which to-him
donne l'escrivain, qui est toutes foiz appareillie à ce faire.
gives the-scribe who is all times made-ready for this to-do
Et s'en vait courant jusques aus autres trois milles.
And himself-thence goes running as-far-as to-the other three miles
Et ceus ont aussi appareillie l'autre qui li donne le
And those have also made-ready the-other who to-him gives the
change, et s'en vait. Et ainsi à chascune trois milles
change and himself-thence goes And thus at each three miles
se changent; si que en ceste maniere a, le seigneur,
themselves they-change so that in this manner has the lord
de ces hommes a pié, grant quantité, qui li portent
of these men on foot great quantity who to-him carry
messages et nouvelles de .x. journées, qui est en un jour
messages and news of ten day-journeys which is in one day
et en une nuit; car aussi vont il la nuit comme le jour;
and in one night for also go they the night as the day

si que, quant il besoingne, il viennent de cent journées
so that when it is-needful they come from hundred day-journeys
en .x. jours et en dix nuis qui est un grant fait. Et
in ten days and in ten nights which is a great feat And
maintes foiz aportent ces hommes, au seigneur, fruit, ou
many times bring these men to-the lord fruit or
autre chose estrange, de .x. journées en une.
other thing strange from ten day-journeys in one

Le seigneur ne prent à ces hommes nul treu, mais leur
The lord not takes from these men any tribute but to-them
fait donner du sien. Encore vous dirai plus que il y a,
has given of-the his Further to-you I-will-tell more that it there is
par ces casaus que je vous ai dit, hommes aussi appareilliez
through these hamlets which I to-you have said men also made-ready
de granz çaintures plaines de campanelles que quant il
with great belts full of little-bells so-that when it
est aucun grant besoing de porter nouvelles au seigneur
is some great need of carrying news to-the lord
d'aucune province, en haste, ou d'aucun baron qui soit
from-some province in haste or from-some baron who be
revelez, ou d'aucune autre chose besoingnable, il vont bien,
rebelled or from-some other thing needful they go fully
le jour, de deux cens et cinquante milles en trois cenz. Et
the day of two hundred and fifty miles to three hundred And
ainsi le nuit; et vous dirai comment. Il prennent chevaus
thus the night and to-you I-will-tell how They take horses
de la poeste où il sont, qui sont appareilliez bons et
of the post-station where they are which are made-ready good and
fres et courans; et montent à cheval, et vont à grans
fresh and running and mount on horse and go at great
cours, tant comme il pueent du cheval traire. Et ceus de
course as-much as they can of-the horse draw And those of

l'autre poeste, qui les sentent venir pour leur campanelles,
the-other post-station who them hear come by their little-bells
leur ont aussi appareillez chevaus et hommes adoubés, si
for-them have also made-ready horses and men equipped so
comme euls qui maintenant que cil joignent, et prennent
as they who at-once that those join and take
ce qu'il ont, ou lettre ou autre chose, et se metent
that which-they have or letter or other thing and themselves put
à grans cours jusques à l'autre poeste, qui leur auront
at great course as-far-as to the-other post-station which for-them will-have
ainsi appareillies hommes et chevaus pour change, touz frès;
thus made-ready men and horses for change all fresh
et ainsi vont toute fois de l'une poeste à l'autre, courant
and thus they-go all times from the-one post-station to the-other running
et changeant chevaus et hommes. Si que il vont tant
and changing horses and men So that they go so-much
que ce est merveilles. Et ces hommes sont moult prisié,
that this is marvels And these men are much prized
et on fascié le ventre et le piz, de belles bendes, et la
and have bound the belly and the breast with fine bands and the
tete; car, aultrement, ne pourroient durer. Et portent une
head for otherwise not they-could last And they-carry a
table de gerfaus toutes fois avec eus; que se il avenoit, par
tablet of gerfalcons all times with them so-that if it happened by
aucune fois que, ou chemin courant, le cheval fust recreu,
some time that on-the road running the horse were spent
ou eust aucune essoingne; et il trouvast qui que ce fust
or had some hindrance and he found whoever that it were
ou chemin, il le puet deschevauchier, et prendre sa beste.
on-the road he him can unhorse and take his beast

Et nul ne leur oseroit refuser; si que, toute fois, il
And anyone not to-them would-dare refuse so that all times they
n'ont autres que bonnes bestes et fresches à leur besoing.
not-have other than good beasts and fresh at their need

Et des chevaus que je vous ai ci dit, qui sont tant par
And of-the horses which I to-you have here said which are so-many through
les poestes, je vous di que le seigneur n'a nulle despense
the post-stations I to-you tell that the lord not-has any expense
d'euls. Et vous dirai comment, et la raison pour quoi. Il
of-them And to-you I-will-tell how and the reason for what He
a estabIi qui est pres à la poeste et à la cité, et fait
has established who is near to the post-station and to the city and has
veoir quans chevaus il pueent donner: si sont donnez à la
seen how-many horses they can give so they-are given to the
poeste. Et puis vient qui est aussi pres à ceste le tel chastel
post-station And then comes who is also near to this-one the such castle
et tel; quans casaus, quans chevaus puent donner, tant et
and such how-many hamlets how-many horses they-can give so-many and
tant mettent à la poeste. Et en ceste maniere sont fournies
so-many they-put to the post-station And in this manner are furnished
toutes les poestes des cités et chasteaus et villes qui leur
all the post-stations of-the cities and castles and towns which to-them
sont entour. Saus ce que bien est voirs que les postes qui sont
are around Save this that well is true that the posts which are
en lieu desvoiable, fait, le seigneur, fournir de ses chevaus.
in place out-of-the-way has the lord furnish with his horses

Or vous laisserons de ces messagiers et de ces poestes
Now you we-will-leave of these messengers and of these post-stations
que bien vous en avons conté et monstré apertement
for well to-you thereof we-have told and shown openly

la verité. Et vous conterons d'une grant bonté que fait,
the truth And to-you will-tell of-a great goodness which does
le seigneur, à sa gent deux fois l'an.
the lord to his people two times the-year

XLII · THE KHAN'S BOUNTY; TREES, RICE WINE, AND COAL

Twice a year the Khan sends to learn whose crops or herds have failed, remits their tribute, and gives them grain and beasts. He has trees planted along the highways so that travelers do not stray. The people of Cathay drink a rice wine with spices, clearer and stronger than wine, and burn black stones dug from the mountains, which hold fire through the night and cost less than wood. In years of plenty he stores grain against dearth and sells it at a quarter of the price.

98 Comment le grant Kaan aide à ses genz quant il ont
How the great Khan aids to his people when they have
soffrete de bles, ou mortalité de leurs bestaus.
want of grains or mortality of their livestock

Encor par verité sachiez que le seigneur envoie ses messages
Further by truth know that the lord sends his envoys
par toutes ses terres et regnes et provinces, pour savoir de
through all his lands and realms and provinces for to-know from
ses hommes s'il ont eu domages de leur blez par deffaut de
his men if-they have had damages of their grains by default of
temps, ou de tempeste, ou d'autre pestilence; et ceus qui ont
weather or of storm or of-other pestilence and those who have
eu domage, si ne leur fait prendre nul treuage celle année.
had damage so not to-them he-has taken any tribute that year
Et encore leur fait donner de son blé, à ce que il aient
And further to-them he-has given of his grain to this that they may-have
que mengier et que semer. Et certes, ce est grant bonté de
what eat and what sow And certainly this is great goodness of

seigneur. Et quant vient l'iver, si fait aussi veoir à ceus
lord And when comes the-winter so he-has also see to those
qui ont bestaus qui ont eu doumages, ou par mortalité, ou
who have livestock who have had damages or by mortality or
par aucune pestilence. Et ceus qui auront eu doumage si ne
by some pestilence And those who will-have had damage so not
leur fait donner, celle année, nul treuage, et leur fait aussi
to-them he-has given that year any tribute and to-them has also
donner de ses bestes. Si que, en telle maniere comme vous avez
given of his beasts So that in such manner as you have
oï, aide et soustiens, le seigneur, chascun an, ses hommes.
heard aids and sustains the lord each year his men

Comment le grant Kaan a fait planter arbres par les voies. 99

How the great Khan has had planted trees along the ways

Encore sachiez que le seigneur a ordené que, par toutes
Further know that the lord has ordained that along all
les mestres voies, que vont li marchant et les messages et
the master ways where go the merchants and the envoys and
toutes autres genz, soient planté grans arbres, l'un pres de
all other people be planted great trees the-one near to
l'autre, à deux ou trois pas; si que toutes ces voies sont ainsi
the-other at two or three paces so that all these ways are thus
faites de moult grans arbres l'un pres de l'autre, qui se
made with very great trees the-one near to the-other which themselves
voient moult de loing, à ce que les cheminans ne desvoient
see very from far to this that the travelers not stray
de jour ne de nuiz; car on treuve ces grans arbres par les
by day nor by night for one finds these great trees along the

chemins desers, qui sont moult grant confort aus viandans qui
roads deserted which are very great comfort to-the wayfarers who
cheminent; et ce est par toutes les voies que il besoignent.
travel and this is through all the ways where they are-needful

100 Ci devise du vin que les gens de Catai boivent.
Here describes of-the wine which the people of Cathay drink

Encore sachiez que la greigneur partie des genz du
Further know that the greater part of-the people of-the
Catai boivent un tel vin comme je vous dirai. Il font une
Cathay drink a such wine as I to-you will-tell They make a
boisson de ris avec moult de bonnes espices en telle maniere
drink of rice with many of good spices in such manner
et si bien que il vaut miex à boivre que nul autre vin;
and so well that it is-worth better to drink than any other wine
car il est moult bon et clair et beau. Il fait devenir
for it is very good and clear and fine It makes become
yvre plutost que autre vin, pour ce qu'il est moult chaut.
drunk sooner than other wine for this that-it is very hot

Or nous laisserons de ce, et vous conterons d'autre.
Now we will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of-other

101 Comment il ardent les pierres comme feu.
How they burn the stones like fire

Il est voir que par toute la province du Catai a une
It is true that through all the province of-the Cathay there-is a
maniere de pierres noires qui se cavent des montaignes
manner of stones black which themselves dig from-the mountains
comme vaine, qui ardent comme buche. Et maintiennent miex
as vein which burn like log And they-keep better
feu que la buche ne fait. Car, se vous les mettez ou feu la
fire than the log — does For if you them put in-the fire the
nuit, vous trouverez au matin le feu; si qu'elles sont si bonnes
night you will-find in-the morning the fire so that-they are so good

que, par toute la province, n'ardent autre chose. Bien est
that through all the province not-they-burn other thing Well is
voirs qu'il ont buche assez; mais ne l'ardent point, pour ce
true that-they have log plenty but not it-burn whit for this
que les pierres vallent miex et coustent moins que la buche.
that the stones are-worth better and cost less than the log

Comment le grant Kaan fait repondre ses blez pour 102
How the great Khan has stored his grains for
secourre ses genz en temps de chierté.
to-succor his people in time of dearth

Sachiez que le seigneur, quant il voit qu'il ont habondance
Know that the lord when he sees that-they have abundance
de blés et a grant marchié se porvoit il et en fait
of grains and at great market himself provides he and thereof has
amasser grandisme quantité par toutes ses provinces, et
amassed very-great quantity through all his provinces and
met en grant maisons, et le fait si bien estuier que il
puts in great houses and it has so well stored that it
dure bien trois ans ou quatre. Et entendez que c'est de
lasts fully three years or four And understand that it-is of
touz blez forment, orge, mil, ris, panise et autres blés; si
all grains wheat barley millet rice panic and other grains so
que quant il avient que il aient aucune chierté d'aucun de
that when it happens that they have some dearth of-any of
ces blés; si en fait traire, le seigneur, assez de celui dont
these grains so thereof has drawn the lord plenty of that of-which
mestier leur est. Et se la mesure se vendoit un besant:
need to-them is And if the measure itself sold a bezant
si leur en faisoit donner quatre, ou tant qu'il en
so to-them thereof he-had given four or so-much that-they thereof
aient bon marchié communal; et c'est à chascun qui en
may-have good market common and this-is to each who thereof

veut pour son vivre. En ceste maniere se pourvoit si,
wishes for his living In this manner himself provides so
le grant sire, que ses genz n'en pueent avoir chierté. Et
the great lord that his people not-thereof can have dearth And
ce fait il faire par toutes pars, là où il a seigneurie;
this makes he do through all parts there where he has lordship
car il en fait tant amasser par chascun lieu, quant il
for he thereof has so-much amassed through each place when they
ont devisé, que au mestier en a chascun tant comme
have divided that at-the need thereof has each as-much as
il veut, et comme li est besoings pour son vivre.
he wishes and as to-him is need for his living

XLIII · ALMS IN KHANBALIQ; THE BRIDGE OF PULISANGHIN

The Khan feeds the poor households of Khanbaliq with grain all year, and thirty thousand people come daily to his court for a hot loaf, so that they worship him as a god. He sends Mark on a mission of four months to the west, and the book follows that road. Ten miles from Khanbaliq the river Pulisanghin, which merchants sail to the ocean, is crossed by a marble bridge three hundred paces long and wide enough for ten horsemen, with twenty-four arches, columns, and carved lions along its parapets.

103 Ci dist comment le grant Sires fait charité as
Here tells how the great Lord does charity to-the
poures.
poor

Et puis que je vous ai conté et dit comment
And since that I to-you have told and said how
le grant Kaan fait grant devise à son pueple
the great Khan makes great provision for his people

de toutes choses touzjours au temps de chierté,
of all things always at-the time of dearth
pour ce que il se pourvoit au temps de grant
for this that he himself provides at-the time of great
marchié. Or si vous vueil ore conter comment il fait
market Now so to-you I-wish now to-tell how he does
charité et grant aumosne aus poures de sa cité de
charity and great alms to-the poor of his city of
Cambaluc.

Khanbaliq

Il est voirs que il fait eslire mainte mesnie de la ville,
It is true that he has chosen many households of the town
qui sont souffreteus, et de tel mesnie sont six en un
who are needy and of such household are six in a
hostel; et de tel huit, et de tel dix; et mains et plus,
lodging and of such eight and of such ten and fewer and more
si comme il sont. Si que c'est en somme un grant nombre
so as they are So that it-is in sum a great number
de gent. Et à chascune mesnie leur fait donner, chascun
of people And to each household to-them he-has given each
an, froument et autres blés, tant qui leur soffist à
year wheat and other grains as-much as to-them suffices for
tout l'an. Et ainsi fait toutes fois chascun an. Et encore
all the-year And thus he-does all times each year And further
plus, que touz ceus qui veulent aler à s'aumosne chascun
more that all those who wish to-go to his-alms each
jour en sa court, si pevent avoir un grant pain chaut pour
day at his court so can have a great loaf hot for
chascun, et nus n'y est refusez; car ainsi l'a ordené
each and anyone not-there is refused for thus it-has ordained
le seigneur; si que il y en vait chascun jour plus de
the lord so that it there thereof goes each day more than

trente mille; et c'est tout l'an par chascun jour. Et c'est
thirty thousand and this-is all the-year by each day And this-is
bien grant bonté de seigneur qui a pitié de son poure
well great goodness of lord who has pity of his poor
pueple. Et il l'ont à si grant bien que il l'aourent
people And they it-hold for so great good that they him-worship
comme dieu.
as god

Or vous ai conté et dit de son ordenement; si nous
Now to-you I-have told and said of his ordinance so we
partirons de la cité de Cambaluc et enterrons dedens le
will-depart from the city of Khanbaliq and will-enter within the
Catai pour conter vous des grans choses et riches qui
Cathay for to-tell you of-the great things and rich which
y sont.
there are

104 Ci commence de la province de Catay et du flun de
Here begins of the province of Cathay and of-the river of
Pulisangin.
Pulisanghin

Et sachiez que le seigneur manda ledit messire Marc
And know that the lord sent the-said my-lord Mark
Pol, qui tout ce raconte, par son message en la partie
Pol who all this tells by his embassy into the part
de ponent. Et se parti de Cambaluc, et ala bien
of west And himself he-departed from Khanbaliq and went fully
quatre moys de journées vers ponent. Et, pour ce, vous
four months of day-journeys toward west And for this to-you
conterai tout ce que il vit en celle voie, alant et
I-will-tell all that which he saw on that way going and
tournoiant.
returning

Quant l'en se part de la cité de Cambaluc et l'en a
When one himself departs from the city of Khanbaliq and one has
chevauchie .x. milles, si treuve l'en un moult gran flun qui
ridden ten miles so finds one a very great river which
est appellez Poulisanghins, lequel flun vait à la mer occeane,
is called Pulisanghin which river goes to the sea ocean
en quoy vait pluseurs marchans avec leur marchandises,
on which go several merchants with their merchandises
dessus ce flun. Si y a moult beau pont de pierre; car,
upon this river So there is very fine bridge of stone for
sachiez, pou en y a de si beaus. Et est si fait. Il
know few thereof there are of so fine And it-is so made It
est lonc bien trois cens pas, et de lè a bien huit;
is long fully three hundred paces and of width it-has fully eight
car bien pevent aler dessus dix hommes à cheval de front.
for well can go upon-it ten men on horse in front
Il y a .xxiiij. arches et .xxiiij. moulins en l'yaue; et
It there is twenty-four arches and twenty-four mills in the-water and
est tout de marbre bis moult beaus et bien fait et bien
it-is all of marble gray very fine and well made and well
assis. Il y a de chascune part du pont, par dessus, un
set It there is on each part of-the bridge by above a
mur de tables de marbre et de coulombes ainsi fait. Il
wall of slabs of marble and of columns thus made It
a au chief une coulombe de marbre, et dessous la
there-is at-the head a column of marble and beneath the
coulombe un lyon de marbre; si que la coulombe est dessus
column a lion of marble so that the column is upon
les rains au lyon. Et par dessus celle coulombe, si a
the loins of-the lion And by above that column so there-is
un autre lyon de marbre, lesquelz lyons sont moult beaux
an other lion of marble which lions are very fine

et granz et bien entailliez soutilment. Et loins de ceste
and great and well carved subtly And far from this
coulombe, et dessus les rains au lyon, loins un pas, si
column and above the loins of-the lion far a pace so
a une autre coulombe avec deux lyons, ainssi faite, ne
there-is an other column with two lions thus made nor
plus ne moins comme la premiere. Et de l'une coulombe
more nor less than the first And from the-one column
à l'autre, si est clos de tables de marbre bis, à ce que
to the-other so it-is closed with slabs of marble gray to this that
les genz ne cheient en l'yaue. Et ainsi va de lonc en
the people not fall in the-water And thus it-goes from long to
lonc d'une part et d'autre; par quoi c'est une moult belle
long on-one part and on-other by which it-is a very fine
chose à veoir.
thing to see

Or vous avons conté de ce beau pont; si vous dirai
Now to-you we-have told of this fine bridge so to-you I-will-tell
d'autres novelles choses.
of-other new things
